OWNER'S HANDBOOK

CITROËN GRAND C4 PICASSO
CITROËN C4 PICASSO

CITROËN

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

YOUR HANDBOOK ON THE INTERNET!

CITROËN lets you view your vehicle's documentation on line, to see earlier versions and the latest information, simply and free of charge.

CITROËN SERVICE
http://service.citroen.com

Connect to **http://service.citroen.com:**

1 | Select your language and register,

2 | click on the link in the "Private customer access" zone to consult the vehicle documentation; a window opens providing access to all of the handbooks,

3 | select your vehicle, choose the body type then the date of issue of the handbook,

4 | finally, click on the heading of your choice.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

We draw your attention to the following...

Your vehicle is fitted with only some of the equipment described in this document, depending on the trim level, version and the specifications for the country in which it is sold.

The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories which are not recommended by CITROËN may result in a failure of your vehicle's electronic system. Please note this specific warning and contact a CITROËN dealer to be shown the recommended equipment and accessories.

Key

safety warning

contributes to the protection of the environment

refer to the page indicated

CITROËN has a presence on every continent,

a complete product range,

bringing together technology and a permanent spirit of innovation,

for a modern and creative approach to mobility.

We thank you and congratulate you on your choice.

At the wheel of your new vehicle,

getting to know each system,

each control, each setting,

makes your trips, your journeys

more comfortable and more enjoyable.

Happy motoring!

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CONTENTS

FAMILIARISATION 4 ➔ 30

- Eco-driving 29

I - MONITORING 31 ➔ 44

- Instrument panels 31
- Indicator and warning lamps 33
- Indicators 42

II - MULTIFUNCTION SCREENS 45 ➔ 55

- Monochrome screen A 45
- Monochrome screen C 47
- Colour screen (MyWay) 50
- NaviDrive colour screen 52
- Trip computer 53

III - COMFORT 56 ➔ 77

- Ventilation 56
- Manual air conditioning 58
- Digital air conditioning 60
- Scented air freshener 65
- Front seats 67
- Rear seats 70
- Seat modularity 75
- Mirrors 76
- Steering wheel adjustment 77

IV - ACCESS 78 ➔ 93

- Remote control key 78
- Starting the engine 81
- Alarm 84
- Electric windows 86
- Doors 88
- Boot 90
- Opening rear screen 90
- Panoramic sunroof 91
- Fuel tank 92

V - VISIBILITY 94 ➔ 104

- Lighting controls 94
- LED lamps 96
- Daytime running lamps 96
- Automatic illumination of headlamps 97
- Headlamp adjustment 98
- Directional lighting 99
- Wiper controls 100
- Automatic rain sensitive wipers 101
- Courtesy lamps 103
- Interior mood lighting 104

VI - FITTINGS 105 ➔ 116

- Interior fittings 105
- Glove box 106
- Mats 108
- Boot fittings 111
- Luggage retaining net 115
- Torch 116

VII - CHILD SAFETY 117 ➔ 125

- Child seats 117
- ISOFIX child seats 122
- Child lock 125

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CONTENTS

VIII - SAFETY 126 ➔ 138

- Direction indicators 126
- Hazard warning lamps 126
- Horn 126
- Tyre under-inflation detection 127
- Braking assistance systems 128
- Trajectory control systems 129
- Emergency or assistance call 130
- Seat belts 131
- Airbags 135

IX - DRIVING 139 ➔ 172

- Electric parking brake 139
- Hill start assist 146
- Manual gearbox 147
- Gear shift indicator 148
- 6-speed electronic gearbox system 149
- Stop & Start 153
- Automatic gearbox 156
- Fixed centred controls steering wheel 160
- Speed limiter 162
- Cruise control 164
- Parking space sensors 166
- Lane departure warning system 168
- Parking sensors 169
- Pneumatic suspension 171

X - CHECKS 173 ➔ 182

- Bonnet 174
- Running out of fuel (Diesel) 176
- Petrol engines 177
- Diesel engines 178
- Checking levels 179
- Checks 181

XI - PRACTICAL INFORMATION 183 ➔ 212

- Temporary puncture repair kit 183
- Changing a wheel 186
- Changing a bulb 190
- Changing a fuse 197
- 12 V battery 203
- Energy economy mode 206
- Towing the vehicle 207
- Towing a trailer 209
- Roof bars 210
- Very cold climate screen 210
- Accessories 211

XII - TECHNICAL DATA 213 ➔ 226

- Petrol engines 213
- Petrol weights 214
- Diesel engines 215
- Diesel weights 217
- Petrol/Diesel weights - commercial versions 221
- Dimensions 223
- Identification markings 226

AUDIO and TELEMATICS 227 ➔ 336

- Emergency or assistance 227
- NaviDrive 231
- MyWay 275
- Audio system 307
- Video pack 329

VISUAL SEARCH 337 ➔ 341

ALPHABETICAL INDEX 342 ➔ 348

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

EXTERIOR

Stop & Start
This system puts the engine temporarily into standby during stops in the traffic (red lights, traffic jams, etc...). The engine restarts automatically as soon as you want to move off.
Stop & Start reduces fuel consumption, exhaust emissions and noise when stationary.
⏭ 153

Front/rear parking sensors
Sensors, located in the bumpers, detect obstacles.
⏭ 169

Parking space sensor
This system measures the size of a parking space available between two vehicles or obstacles.
⏭ 166

Xenon directional headlamps
This system allows the light beams to follow the direction of the road ahead.
⏭ 99

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

EXTERIOR

Panoramic sunroof
⏭ 91

Opening rear screen
⏭ 90

Pneumatic rear suspension
This enhances driving comfort and maintains a constant body height, whatever the vehicle load.
⏭ 171

Exterior side spotlamps
These light up the zones facing the driver's and passenger's doors.
⏭ 98

Door mirrors
With electric foldback.
Automatically tilts in reverse gear.
⏭ 76

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

OPENING

Remote control key

A. Central locking
B. Unlocking
C. Remote operation of lighting
D. Key release/storage

Selective opening

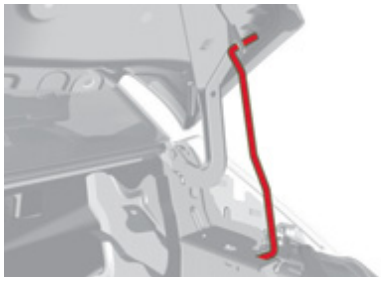
Using the multifunction screen, you can choose from the following options for opening your vehicle with the remote control:

- either all of the doors and the tailgate,
- or the driver's door with a first press, then all of the other doors with a second press.

⏭ 78

Bonnet opening/closing

To release the bonnet, pull the lever located under the dashboard towards you. Then operate the safety catch at the front of the bonnet,



Bonnet stay: Unclip the stay and insert it into the notch.

To close: move the stay back to its initial position, lower the bonnet, then allow it to slam shut at the end of its travel.

⏭ 174

Fuel tank

Capacity: approximately 60 litres.

Press control **A**, located on the switch panel to the left of the dashboard. The fuel flap automatically opens up fully.

Insert the pump nozzle so as to push in the metal flap **B**.

Push the fuel filler flap to close it.

⏭ 92

After switching off the ignition, control **A** is only active for a few minutes. If necessary, switch on the ignition again to reactivate it.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

OPENING

Opening rear screen

This opening gives easy access to the boot, even if you are parked close to a wall or to another vehicle.

Opening

☞ Press control **2**. The grip **4** is in line with the rear wiper.

Closing

☞ Lower the rear screen.

⏭ 90

Opening the tailgate

☞ Press control **1**.

You cannot open the tailgate if the rear screen is already open.

Closing the tailgate

☞ Lower the tailgate, using one of the grips **3**, located on the interior tailgate trim.

☞ Past the balancing point, allow the tailgate to close itself (do not assist it or slow it down).

Modubox (CITROËN C4 Picasso)

Load: 22 kg maximum.

The Modubox is composed of a shopping trolley and a flexible bag which can be used independently of each other depending on your needs.

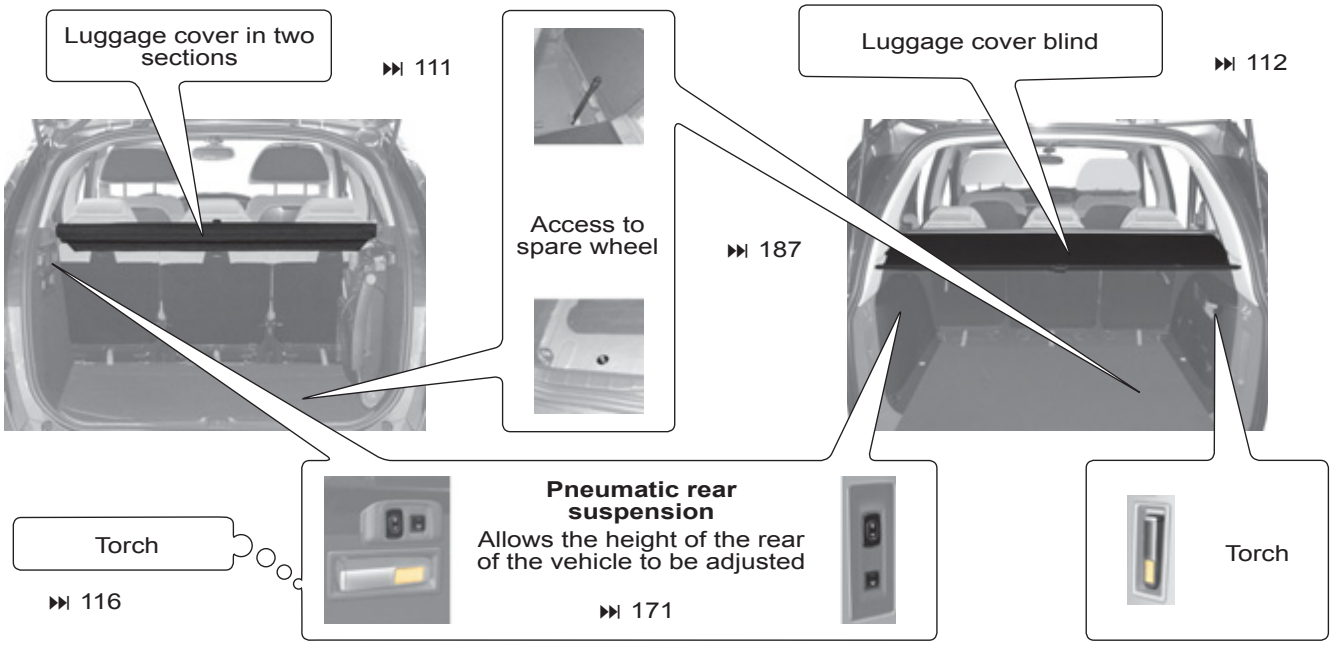
⏭ 112

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

BOOT

CITROËN C4 Picasso

CITROËN Grand C4 Picasso



Temporary puncture repair kit

Depending on model, the kit is located either in the boot well or in the compartment under the left hand second-row passenger (open the flap by turning the screw a quarter turn).

This kit is a complete system for a temporary repair; it is made up of a compressor and a sealant cartridge.

⏭ 183

Refer also to the section "Practical information - § Changing a wheel".

⏭ 186

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

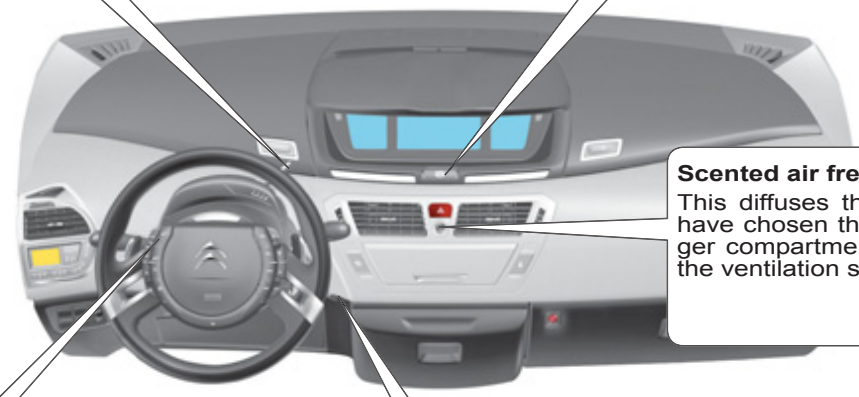
INTERIOR

6-speed electronic gearbox system
This offers a fully automatic mode, a manual mode and an auto-sequential mode which combines the advantages of the automatic and manual modes, using the paddles behind the steering wheel.

⏭ 149

Electric parking brake
For holding and releasing the vehicle. Operation is automatic with manual operation possible using the dashboard control.

⏭ 139



Scented air freshener
This diffuses the fragrance that you have chosen throughout the passenger compartment from its location in the ventilation system.

⏭ 65

Speed limiter/Cruise control
These functions control the speed of the vehicle to the value that you have programmed.

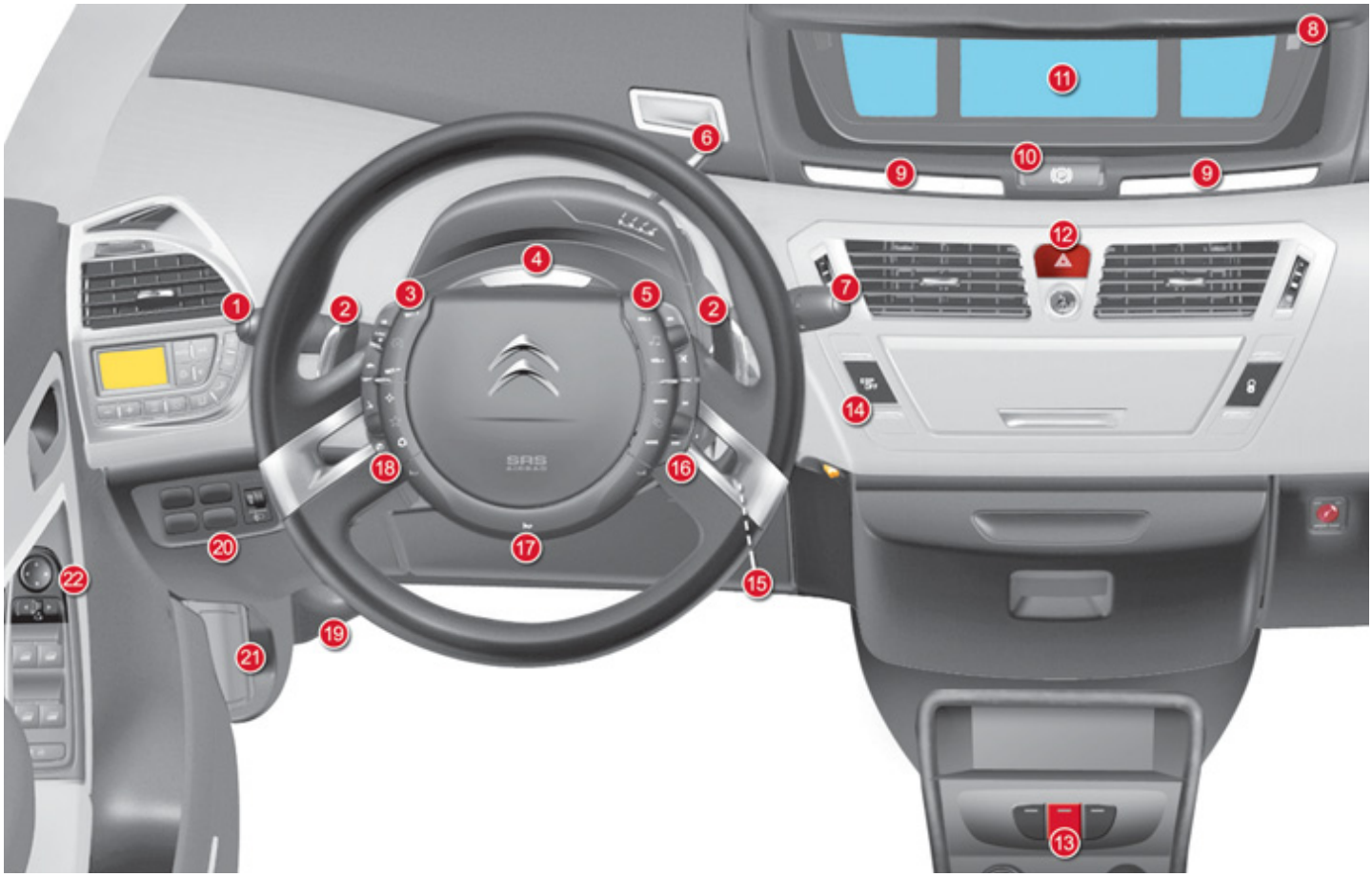
⏭ 162, 164

Interior mood lighting
This soft lighting of the passenger compartment improves visibility inside the vehicle when the light is poor.

⏭ 104

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS

1. Controls:
- Lighting
- Direction indicators
- Front and rear foglamps

2. Paddles for automatic gearbox or 6-speed electronic gearbox system

3. Cruise control and speed limiter steering mounted controls

4. Direction indicator warning lamps

5. Audio and telematics system steering mounted controls

6. Gear lever for automatic gearbox or 6-speed electronic gearbox system

7. Controls:
- Windscreen wipe
- Screenwash
- Rear screen wipe
- Trip computer

8. Controls:
- Trip mileage recorder reset button
- Lighting rheostat

9. Warning lamps display (with the MyWay or NaviDrive multifunction screen)

10. Electric parking brake

11. Instrument panel

12. Hazard warning lamps

13. Switch panels:
- Emergency or assistance
- Lane departure warning system

14. ESP deactivation button

15. Steering lock - Ignition switch

16. Multifunction screen steering mounted controls

17. Horn

18. Optional function controls (on steering wheel)

19. Fusebox access cover

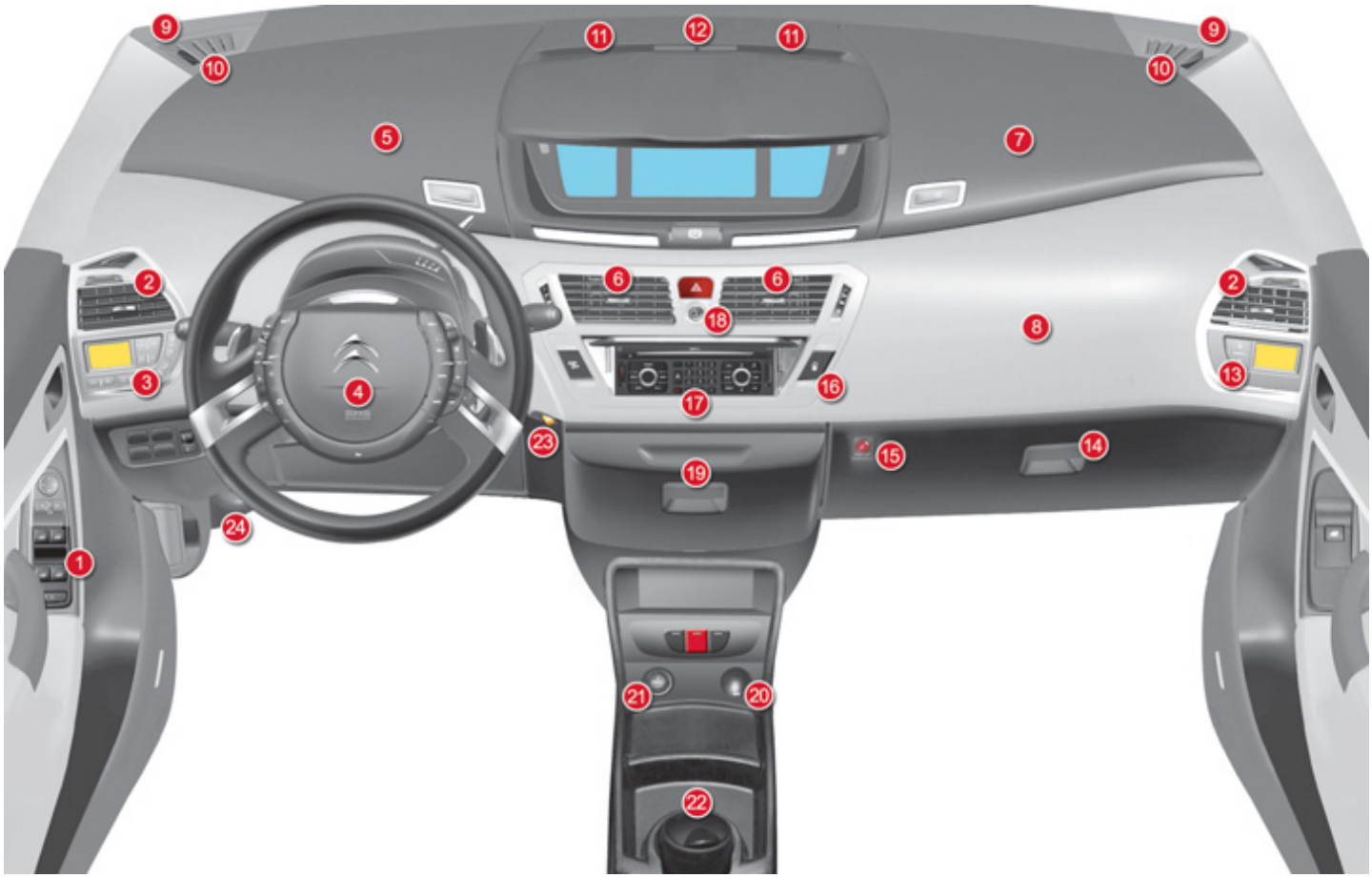
20. Controls:
- Fuel filler flap
- Front and rear parking sensors
- Stop & Start
- Volumetric alarm deactivation
- Headlamp adjustment

21. Bonnet release

22. Mirror controls

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

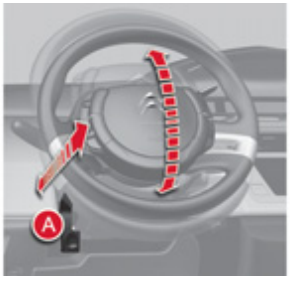
INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS

1. Controls:
   - Electric windows
   - Child lock
2. Side window demist vent
   Side air vent
3. Driver's air conditioning controls
4. Driver's front airbag
5. Left hand upper storage
6. Central air vents
7. Right hand upper storage
8. Front passenger's airbag
9. Speaker (Tweeter) (right and left)
10. Quarter light glass demist vent
11. Windscreen demist vent
12. Sunshine sensor
13. Passenger's air conditioning controls
14. Lower glovebox:
    - Air freshener clips
    - Various storage
15. Key switch:
    - Front passenger's airbag activation/deactivation
16. Central locking button
17. Audio and telematics system
18. Scented air freshener
19. Cooled storage
20. USB port (or blanking plug)
21. 12 V accessory socket or cigar lighter
22. Portable ashtray
23. Interior mood lighting control
24. Steering wheel adjustment lever

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SITTING COMFORTABLY

Adjusting the steering wheel



The steering wheel can be adjusted for height and reach.

Release the steering wheel by pulling lever **A** towards you.

Adjust the position of the steering wheel then lock it pushing the lever fully back.

⏭ 77

For safety reasons, these adjustments must not be carried out whilst driving.

Automatic photochromic rear view mirror

It automatically and progressively changes between day use and night use.

⏭ 77

Child surveillance mirror

This additional mirror **1** allows you to monitor the rear passengers. It can be tilted to eliminate dazzle.

⏭ 105

Door mirror adjustment

This operates with the ignition switched on.

From the driver's seat, select the door mirror by moving control **1** to the left or right, then adjust the door mirror as required in four directions using control **2**.

Demisting-defrosting of the door mirrors is linked to that of the rear screen.

Door mirror foldback

When the vehicle is parked, the door mirrors can be folded back either manually or automatically.

⏭ 76

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SITTING COMFORTABLY

Front seats

Manual adjustments

Head restraint

Armrest

Backrest angle

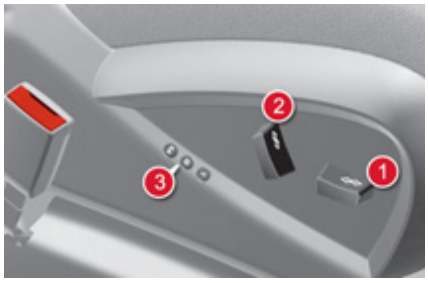
Seat height adjustment

Lumbar support

Forwards-backwards adjustment

⏭ 67

Electric adjustments



1. Adjustment of seat height, angle and forwards-backwards position
2. Adjustment of backrest angle and lumbar support
3. Driver: storing driving positions

The seats can also be adjusted on a temporary basis:

- on opening one of the front doors,
- after switching on the ignition.

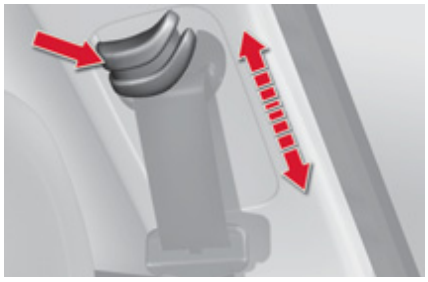
Heated seat control (located on the inside of the front seats)

⏭ 68

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SITTING COMFORTABLY

Adjusting the seat belt height



To adjust the seat belt, squeeze the control and slide it in the direction required.

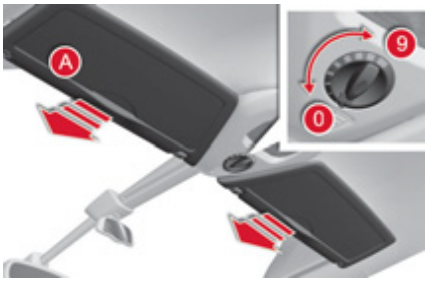
⏭ 131

Electric windows controls

From the driver's seat position, the controls located on the door are used to operate the electric windows.

⏭ 86

Sliding sun visors



☞ Slide the blind on the visor to the desired position by pushing at **A**.

The blinds are extended on the sun visor rails.

☞ Fold the visor downwards, to prevent being dazzled.

⏭ 105

Panoramic sunroof blind

Opening (positions **1** to **9**)
Closing (position **0**)
The blind has an anti-pinch system.

⏭ 91

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Recommended settings

- **Heating/manual air conditioning:**

Operate For...					A/C	
Cooling		or	**Fully cold to start, then personal settings**	**Maximum to start, then personal settings**	**ON**	**ON when starting, then OFF**
Heating		or	**Fully hot to start, then personal settings**	**Maximum to start, then personal setting**		**ON when starting, then OFF**
Demisting Defrosting			**Fully hot**			**OFF**

- **Digital air conditioning:** the fully automatic mode is recommended - press **"AUTO"**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

MONITORING

Instrument panel

with multifunction screen A or C

⏭ 31

with the MyWay or NaviDrive multifunction screen

⏭ 32

1. Instrument panel.
2. Multifunction screen.
3. Control buttons.
4. Warning lamps display zone.

Seat belts not fastened/ unfastened warning lamp

This warning lamp informs you if the driver's or front passenger's seat belt is not fastened (depending on model), and if the front passenger's (depending on model) or the second-row passengers' seat belts are unfastened. The illuminated positions represent those whose seat belts are not fastened/unfastened.

⏭ 41

Tyre under-inflation detection

This function warns you if a tyre is deflated or punctured.

This system does not absolve the driver of the need to regularly check the tyre pressures.

Under-inflation warning

The service warning lamp comes on, and a vehicle outline is displayed, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.

Puncture

The **STOP** warning lamp comes on, and a vehicle outline is displayed, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.

⏭ 127

Manual central locking

You can use electrical central locking or unlocking by pressing on button **A**.

If one of the doors is open or is not closed properly, central locking will not work.

Automatic central locking

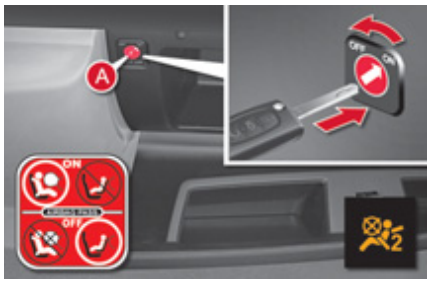
Once the function has been activated, when starting the engine, the system automatically locks the doors once you reach approximately 6 mph (10 km/h).

This function can be deactivated by pressing button **A** for more than two seconds.

⏭ 89

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Front airbags



Deactivation of front passenger airbag

1. Insert the key in lock **A**.
2. Select the **"OFF"** position.
3. Remove the key.

⏭ 135

Child lock

Manual control

The rear doors are locked by operating the lever using the key (aperture at an angle).

Electric control

Pressing the button prohibits operation of the electric windows from the rear of the vehicle and opening of the rear doors from inside.

⏭ 125

ISOFIX mounting system

The 3 second-row seats of your vehicle are fitted with regulation ISOFIX mounting points, with 3 rings for each seat position **A B C.**

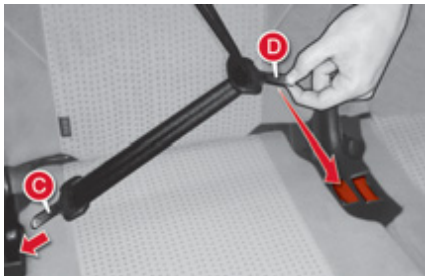
This fixing system is designed for children weighing up to 18 kg.

⏭ 122

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Seat belts

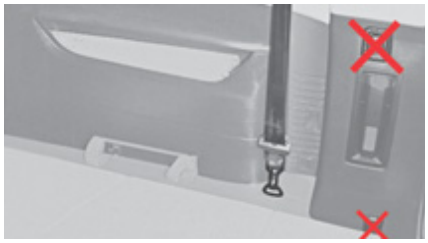
Second row centre seat belt



☞ Insert tongue **C** into the buckle on the right, then insert the second tongue **D** into the buckle on the left.

⏭ 132

Using the third-row passenger seat belts (CITROËN Grand C4 Picasso)



Take care to attach the third-row passenger seat belts to the rings provided for this purpose.

Do not attach the belts to the load anchorage points marked with a red cross (see illustration above).

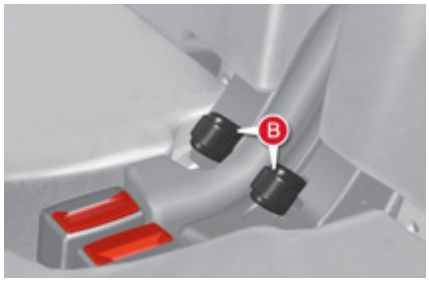
Stowing the tongue of the third-row seat belt

⏭ 133

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SECOND ROW SEATS

"Comfort" position



The 3 second-row seats are independent of each other and are all the same width. They can all be adjusted to the "comfort" position.

Placing a seat in the "comfort" position

☞ Pull on strap **B**.

The backrest reclines and the seat base pivots slightly.

Returning the seat to its original position

☞ Pull on strap **B** and guide the seat forwards.

⏭ 70

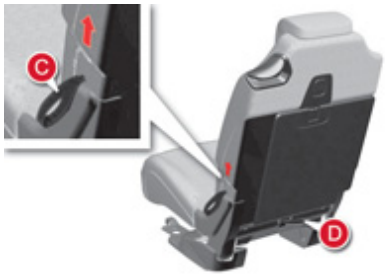
Longitudinal adjustment

Lift up control **A**, located at the front of the seat, and adjust the seat into the desired position.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SECOND ROW SEATS

Folding the seats



From outside

☞ Pull firmly upwards on strap **C**, as indicated by the red arrow, to unlock the seat; keep pulling until the seat is fully folded.

From the boot - whilst loading, for example (CITROËN Grand C4 Picasso)

Having firstly folded the third-row seats.

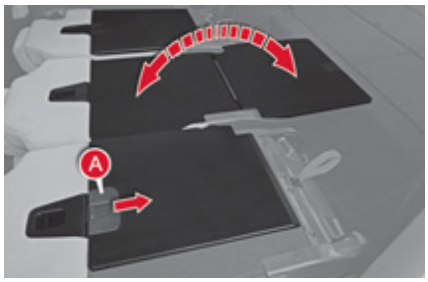
☞ Pull on strap **D** to unlock the required seat.

Repositioning the seats

Return the rigid panels of the second-row seats to their initial (upright) position and lock them in position (CITROËN Grand C4 Picasso).

Raise the backrest and push it backwards until it locks in position.

Rigid panel (CITROËN Grand C4 Picasso)



A rigid panel is attached to each second-row seat backrest.

Unlocking/Locking the rigid panel

☞ Slide latch **A** of the panel downwards, to unlock it.

☞ Return the panel to the upright position, then slide latch **A** upwards to lock it.

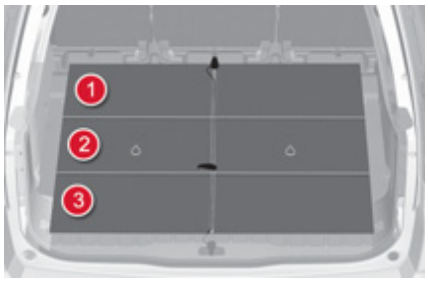
Before deploying the rigid panels, check that the second row seats are in their fully rear position.

⏭ 72

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

THIRD ROW SEATS (CITROËN GRAND C4 PICASSO)

Installing the seats



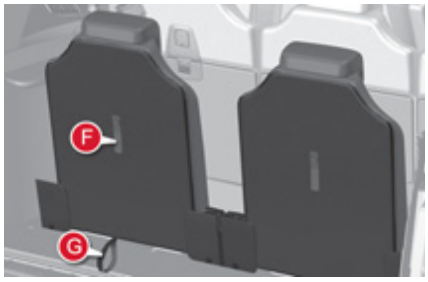
Fold the concertina boards (**1 2 3**) arranged above each of the third-row seats.

Pull on the black strap **F**, located on the seat backrest.

⏭ 74

Before moving the third-row seats, do not forget to lock in the rigid panels first (located at the base of the second-row seat backrests).

Stowing the seats



Put the three sections of the concertina boards (**1 2 3**) to their vertical position, then pull on the red strap **G**.

Before moving the third-row seats, return the rigid panels to the upright position and lock them.

Do not leave objects either on or underneath the second-row seats when you are folding them.

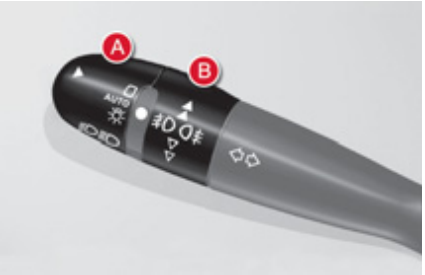
Access to third-row seats

Pull on control **E**, located at the top of the second-row seats backrest.

⏭ 73

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Lighting stalk



Ring A

1. Off
2. Automatic illumination of headlamps
3. Sidelamps
4. Dipped/main beam headlamps

⏭ 94

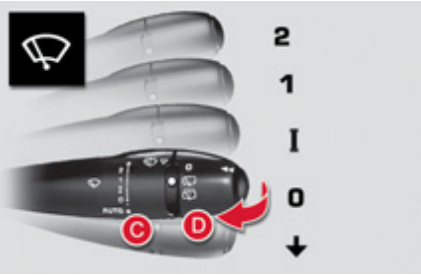
Ring B

Front foglamps
Rear foglamp

⏭ 95

Under certain climatic conditions (low temperature, humid), the presence of condensation on the inner surfaces of the headlamps and rear lamps is not an indication of a fault; this disappears a few minutes after switching on the lamps.

Wiper stalk



Stalk C: windscreen wipe

Switching on "AUTO" mode

☞ Press the stalk down and release.

Switching off "AUTO" mode

☞ Press the stalk up and return it to position **"0"**.

The automatic rain sensitive wipers must be reactivated each time the vehicle is started.

Ring D: rear screen wipe

Stop.

Intermittent.

Timed wash and wipe.

⏭ 100

Fixed centred controls steering wheel

1. Optional function controls
2. Cruise control/speed limiter and parking space sensor
3. Audio system controls
4. Multifunction screen controls

⏭ 160

5. Horn

⏭ 126

6. Warning lamps for direction indicators and vehicle lamps

⏭ 33

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Electric parking brake

This device combines:

- automatic functions: Automatic application when the engine stops and automatic release on use of the accelerator (automatic operation by default);
- manual use: Manual application/release of parking brake is possible by operating control lever **A**.

When in automatic mode, it remains possible to apply or release the parking brake at any time:

☞ To apply it, pull on the lever **A**.

☞ To release it, pull then release lever **A**.

Do not drive if the parking brake warning lamp and the **P** indicator on the lever **A** are on.

⏭ 139

Before leaving the vehicle, check that the electric parking brake warning lamp **P** (red) is on fixed (not flashing).

If you leave the vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake manually.

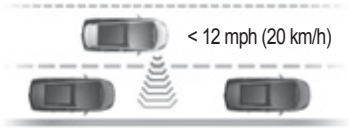
Never leave a child alone inside the vehicle with the ignition on, as they could release the parking brake.

Hill start assist

To aid starting on a gradient, your vehicle is equipped with a system which keeps it immobilised for about 2 seconds, the approximate time it takes to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal.

⏭ 146

Parking space sensor



You can activate this function by pressing button **A**.

Once the space has been measured, the system displays the following messages:

Parking possible

Parking difficult

Parking not advised

⏭ 166

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

DRIVING

6-speed electronic gearbox system

R Reverse
N Neutral
A Automatic mode
M Manual mode
Using control paddles **1 "+"** and **2 "-"**:
- gear changing in manual mode,
- temporary manual operation in automatic mode.

Starting

☞ Check that the gear lever **3** is in neutral (position **N**).
☞ Press firmly on the brake pedal and turn the ignition key.

⏭ 149

Automatic gearbox

P Park
R Reverse
N Neutral
D Automatic mode
M Sequential mode
Using control paddles **1 "+"** and **2 "-"**:
- gear changing in sequential mode,
- temporary manual operation in automatic mode.

Starting

☞ Check that the gear lever **3** is in position **P** or **N** and turn the ignition key.

To exit position **P**, press on the brake pedal before moving the gear lever.

⏭ 156

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Stop & Start

Engine going into STOP mode

ECO The **"ECO"** warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel and the engine goes into stand-by:

- **with the 6-speed electronic gearbox system**; at speeds below 4 mph (6 km/h), press the brake pedal or put the gear lever into neutral (position **N**).

In certain circumstances the STOP mode may not be available; the **"ECO"** warning lamp flashes for a few seconds then goes off.

⏭ 153

Going into engine START mode

ECO The **"ECO"** warning lamp goes off and the engine restarts:

- with the gear lever in position **A** or **M**, release the brake pedal,
- or with the gear lever in position **N** and the brake pedal released, change to position **A** or **M**,
- or select reverse gear.

In certain condition, START mode may be invoked automatically; the **"ECO"** warning lamp flashes then goes off.

⏭ 154

Deactivation/Reactivation

You can deactivate the system at any time by pressing the **"ECO OFF"** button; the button's warning lamp comes on.

The system is reactivated autom-photoatically every time you start the engine with the key.

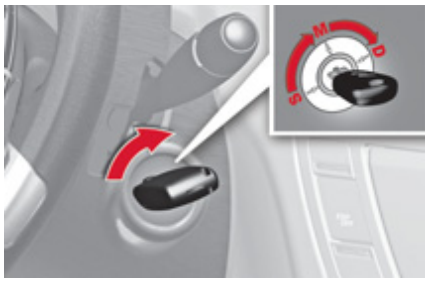
Before refuelling or doing anything under the bonnet, you must switch off the ignition with the key.

⏭ 154

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

DRIVING

Ignition switch



- **S: Steering lock**
  To release the steering lock, operate the steering slightly while turning the key, but without forcing.
- **M: On, running position**
- **D: Starter**
  Release the key as soon as the engine starts. Do not operate the starter when the engine is running.

⏭ 81

Speed limiter

1. Limiter mode On/Off.
2. Decrease the programmed value.
3. Speed limiter On/Off.
4. Increase the programmed value.

⏭ 162

Cruise control

1. Cruise control mode On/Off.
2. Programming a speed/Reducing the programmed value.
3. Cruise control On/Off.
4. Programming a speed/Increasing the programmed value.

In order to be programmed or activated, the vehicle speed must be higher than 25 mph (40 km/h), with at least fourth gear engaged on a manual gearbox (second gear for the 6-speed electronic gearbox system or automatic gearbox).

⏭ 164

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ECO-DRIVING

Eco-driving is a range of everyday practices that allow the motorist to optimise their fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions.

Optimise the use of your gearbox

With a manual gearbox, move off gently, change up without waiting and drive by changing up quite soon. If your vehicle has the system, the gear shift indicator invites you to change up; it is displayed in the instrument panel, follow its instructions.

With an automatic or electronic gearbox, stay in Drive **"D"** or Auto **"A"**, according to the type of gearbox, without pressing the accelerator pedal heavily or suddenly.

Drive smoothly

Maintain a safe distance between vehicles, use engine braking rather than the brake pedal, and press the accelerator progressively. These practices contribute towards a reduction in fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions and also helps reduce the background traffic noise.

If your vehicle has cruise control, make use of the system at speeds above 25 mph (40 km/h) when the traffic is flowing well.

Control the use of your electrical equipment

Before moving off, if the passenger compartment is too warm, ventilate it by opening the windows and air vents before using the air conditioning.

Above 30 mph (50 km/h), close the windows and leave the air vents open.

Remember to make use of equipment that can help keep the temperature in the passenger compartment down (sunroof and window blinds...).

Switch off the air conditioning, unless it has automatic digital regulation, as soon as the desired temperature is attained.

Switch off the demisting and defrosting controls, if not automatic.

Switch off the heated seat as soon as possible.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Switch off the headlamps and front foglamps when the level of light does not require their use.

Avoid running the engine before moving off, particularly in winter; your vehicle will warm up much faster while driving.

As a passenger, if you avoid connecting your multimedia devices (film, music, video game...), you will contribute towards limiting the consumption of electrical energy, and so of fuel.

Disconnect your portable devices before leaving the vehicle.

Limit the causes of excess consumption

Spread loads throughout the vehicle; place the heaviest items in the bottom of the boot, as close as possible to the rear seats.

Limit the loads carried in the vehicle and reduce wind resistance (roof bars, roof rack, bicycle carrier, trailer...). Use a roof box in preference.

Remove roof bars and roof racks after use.

At the end of winter, remove snow tyres and refit your summer tyres.

Observe the recommendations on maintenance

Check the tyre pressures regularly, when cold, referring to the label in the door aperture, driver's side.

Carry out this check in particular:

- before a long journey,
- at each change of season,
- after a long period out of use.

Don't forget the spare wheel and the tyres on any trailer or caravan.

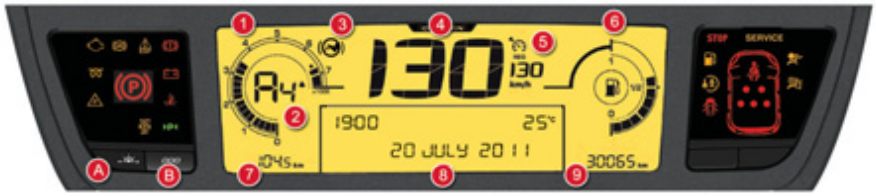
Have your vehicle serviced regularly (engine oil, oil filter, air filter...) and observe the schedule of operations recommended by the manufacturer.

When refuelling, do not continue after the 3rd cut-off of the nozzle to avoid any overflow.

At the wheel of your new vehicle, it is only after the first 1 800 miles (3 000 kilometres) that you will see the fuel consumption settle down to a consistent average.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

MONOCHROME INSTRUMENT PANEL (WITH MULTIFUNCTION SCREEN A)



TWO-TONE INSTRUMENT PANEL (WITH MULTIFUNCTION SCREEN C)

Central screen

1. Rev counter
2. Gear efficiency indicator for a manual gearbox or gear selector lever and gear for the electronic gearbox system or automatic gearbox
3. "Foot on brake" warning lamp for the electronic gearbox system or automatic gearbox/Electric parking brake
4. Speedometer
5. Cruise control or speed limiter setting
6. Fuel gauge
7. Trip mileage recorder
8. Multifunction screen A/C
9. Total mileage recorder

   In this zone, the following information appears in succession when the ignition is switched on:
   - service indicator,
   - engine oil level indicator,
   - total mileage recorder.

Controls

A. Lighting rheostat (available day and night)

B. Trip mileage recorder reset

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

I

INSTRUMENT PANEL WITH MyWay OR NaviDrive MULTIFUNCTION SCREEN

Central screen

1. Cruise control or speed limiter setting
2. Speedometer
3. MyWay or NaviDrive multifunction screen
4. Rev counter
5. "Foot on brake" warning lamp for the electronic gearbox system or automatic gearbox/Electric parking brake
6. Fuel gauge
7. Gear efficiency indicator for a manual gearbox or selector lever position and gear for the electronic gearbox system or automatic gearbox
8. Trip mileage recorder
9. Total mileage recorder

   In this zone, the following information appears in succession when the ignition is switched on:
   - service indicator,
   - engine oil level indicator,
   - total mileage recorder.
10. Warning lamp zone.

Controls

A. Lighting rheostat (available day and night)

B. Trip mileage recorder reset

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Indicator and warning lamps

Visual indicators informing the driver that a system is in operation (operation or deactivation indicator lamps) or of the occurrence of a fault (warning lamp).

When the ignition is switched on

Certain warning lamps come on for a few seconds when the vehicle's ignition is switched on.

When the engine is started, these same warning lamps should go off.

If they remain on, before moving off, refer to the information on the warning lamp concerned.

Associated warnings

The illumination of certain warning lamps may be accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen.

The warning lamps may come on continuously (fixed) or flash.

Certain warning lamps may come on in two different modes. Only by relating the type of illumination to the operating status of the vehicle can it be ascertained whether the situation is normal or whether a fault has occurred.

Operation indicator lamps

If one of the following indicator lamps comes on, this confirms that the corresponding system has come into operation.

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action/Observations
	Left-hand direction indicator	flashing with buzzer.	The lighting stalk is pushed down.	
	Right-hand direction indicator	flashing with buzzer.	The lighting stalk is pushed up.	
	Hazard warning lamps	flashing with audible signal.	The hazard warning lamps switch, located on the dashboard, has been operated.	The left-hand and right-hand direction indicators and their associated indicator lamps flash simultaneously.
	Sidelamps	fixed.	The lighting stalk is in the "Sidelamps" position.	
	Dipped beam headlamps	fixed.	The lighting stalk is in the "Dipped beam headlamps" position.	
	Main beam headlamps	fixed.	The lighting stalk is pulled towards you.	Pull the stalk to return to dipped beam headlamps.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

I

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action/Observations
	Front foglamps	fixed.	The front foglamps are switched on.	Turn the ring on the stalk rearwards twice to switch off the front foglamps.
	Rear foglamps	fixed.	The rear foglamps are switched on.	Turn the ring on the stalk rearwards to switch off the rear foglamps.
	Diesel engine pre-heating	fixed.	The ignition switch is at the 2nd position (ignition on).	Wait until the warning lamp has switched off before starting. The duration for which the warning lamp is on is determined by the climatic conditions.
	Parking brake	fixed.	The parking brake is applied or not properly released.	Release the parking brake to switch off the warning lamp, keeping your foot on the brake pedal. Observe the safety recommendations. For further information on the parking brake, refer to the "Driving" section.
		flashing.	The parking brake is not fully applied or is released.	
	Parking space sensors	fixed.	The parking space sensors function is active.	Press the corresponding button to deactivate it.
		flashing.	The system is measuring the space.	Once the measurement has been done, the warning lamp comes on fixed again.
	Electric child lock	temporarily.	The electric child lock is activated.	Displayed for a few seconds after activating the function and every time the ignition is switched on. For more information, refer to the "Child safety" section.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action/Observations
	Passenger's airbag system	fixed.	The control switch, located in the glove box, is in the "**ON**" position. The passenger's front airbag is activated. In this case, do not install a rear-facing child seat.	Turn the control switch to the "**OFF**" position to deactivate the front passenger's airbag. In this case you can install a rear-facing child seat.
ECO	**Stop & Start**	fixed.	When the vehicle stops (red lights, traffic jams, ...) the Stop & Start system has put the engine into STOP mode.	The warning lamp goes off and the engine restarts automatically in START mode, as soon as you want to move off.
		flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.	STOP mode is temporarily unavailable. or START mode is invoked automatically.	Refer to "Driving - § Stop & Start" for special cases with STOP mode and START mode.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

I

Deactivation indicator lamps

If one of the following indicator lamps comes on, this confirms that the corresponding system has been switched off intentionally. This is may be accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen.

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action/Observations
	Passenger's airbag system	fixed.	The control, located in the glove box, is set to the **OFF** position. The passenger's front airbag is deactivated. In this case you can install a "rear facing" child seat.	Set the control to the **ON** position to activate the passenger's front airbag. In this case, do not fit a child seat in the rear-facing position.
ESP	**ESP/ASR**	fixed.	The button, located in the middle of the dashboard, is pressed. Its indicator lamp is on. The ESP/ASR is deactivated. ESP: electronic stability programme. ASR: anti-skid regulation.	Press the button to activate the ESP/ASR. Its indicator lamp switches off. The ESP/ASR system is activated automatically when the vehicle is started. If deactivated, the system is reactivated automatically from approximately 30 mph (50 km/h).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Warning lamps

When the engine is running or the vehicle is being driven, the illumination of one of the following warning lamps indicates a fault which requires action on the part of the driver.

Any fault resulting in the illumination of a warning lamp must be investigated further by reading the associated message in the multifunction screen.

If you encounter any problems, do not hesitate to contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action/Observations
STOP	STOP	fixed, associated with another warning lamp.	It is associated with a punctured tyre or the engine coolant temperature.	Stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Park, switch off the ignition and call a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
SERVICE	Service	temporarily.	A minor fault has occurred for which there is no specific warning lamp.	Identify the fault by reading the message shown in the screen, such as, for example: - the closing of the doors, boot, rear screen or bonnet, - the remote control battery, - the tyre pressures, - saturation of the particle emission filter (Diesel). For any other faults, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
		fixed.	A major fault has occurred for which there is no specific warning lamp.	Identify the fault by reading the message shown in the screen and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action/Observations
(!) + (ABS)	**Braking**	fixed, associated with the STOP warning lamp.	The braking system fluid level is too low.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Top up with brake fluid recommended by CITROËN. If the problem persists, have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
		fixed, associated with the STOP and ABS warning lamp.	The electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) system has a fault.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Have it checked by a CITROËN or a qualified workshop.
(ABS)	**Anti-lock Braking System (ABS)**	fixed.	The anti-lock braking system has a fault.	The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at reduced speed and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.
(P)	**Electric parking brake**	flashing.	The application or release of the electric parking brake was interrupted.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Park on level ground, switch off the ignition and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
+ (P)	**Electric parking brake malfunction**	fixed.	The electric parking brake has a fault.	Automatic application/release is no longer possible. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay. The parking brake can be released manually using the emergency release procedure. For more information on the electric parking brake, refer to the "Driving" section.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action/Observations
AUTO (P) OFF	**Deactivation of the automatic functions of the electric parking brake**	fixed.	The "automatic application" (on switching off the engine) and "automatic release" functions are deactivated or faulty.	Activate the function (according to country) via the vehicle configuration menu or contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop if automatic application/release is not possible. The parking brake can be released manually using the emergency release procedure. For more information on the electric parking brake, refer to the "Driving" section.
ESP	**Dynamic stability control (ESP/ASR)**	flashing.	The ESP/ASR regulation is active.	The system optimises traction and improves the directional stability of the vehicle.
		fixed.	Unless it has been deactivated (button pressed and its indicator lamp on) the ESP/ASR system has a fault.	Have it checked by a CITROËN or a qualified workshop.
	Engine autodiagnosis system	flashing.	The engine management system has a fault.	Risk of destruction of the catalytic converter. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
		fixed.	The emission control system has a fault.	The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a CITROËN dealer or qualified workshop without delay.
	Airbags	temporarily.	This lamp comes on for a few seconds when you turn on the ignition, then goes off.	This lamp should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
		fixed.	One of the airbag or seat belt pretensioner systems has a fault.	Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action/Observations
	Low fuel level	fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen.	When it first comes on there remains **approximately 7 litres of fuel** in the tank.	You must refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out of fuel. This warning lamp will come on every time the ignition is switched on, until sufficient fuel has been added. Fuel tank capacity: 60 litres. Never continue to drive until you run out of fuel, this could damage the emission control and injection systems.
	Foot on the brake pedal	fixed.	The brake pedal is not pressed.	With the 6-speed electronic gearbox system, you must press the brake pedal to start the engine (lever in position **N**).
		flashing.	The brake pedal is not pressed.	With the automatic gearbox, with the engine running (lever in position **P**), press the brake pedal before releasing the parking brake, to unlock the lever and come out of position **P**. If you wish to release the parking brake without pressing the brake pedal, this warning lamp will remain on.
			With the electronic gearbox system, if you hold the vehicle on an incline using the accelerator for too long, the clutch overheats.	Use the brake pedal and/or the electric parking brake.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action/Observations
	Maximum coolant temperature	fixed red.	The temperature of the cooling system is too high.	Stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Wait until the engine has cooled down before topping up the level, if necessary. If the problem persists, contact a CITROËN dealer or qualified workshop.
	Battery charge	fixed.	The battery charging circuit has a fault (dirty or loose terminals, slack or cut alternator belt, ...).	The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	Door(s) open	fixed if the speed is below 6 mph (10 km/h). fixed and accompanied by an audible signal if the speed is above 6 mph (10 km/h).	A door, the boot or the rear screen is still open.	Close the door or boot.
	Seat belts not fastened/ unfastened	fixed.	The driver and/or the front/ rear passenger has not fastened or has unfastened their seat belt.	Pull the strap then insert the tongue in the buckle. The illuminated dots represent the passengers that have not fastened/unfastened their seat belt. They come on: - fixed for 30 about seconds on starting the vehicle, - fixed from 0 to 12 mph (0 to 20 km/h) when driving, - flashing above 12 mph (20 km/h), accompanied by an audible signal for about 120 seconds.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Service indicator

System which informs the driver when the next service is due, in accordance with the manufacturer's servicing schedule.

The point at which the service is due is calculated from the last indicator zero reset. It is determined by two parameters:

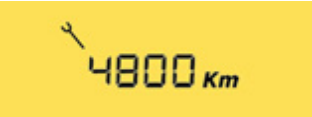
- the distance travelled,
- the time elapsed since the last service.

More than 1 000 km remain before the next service is due

For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the spanner symbolising the service operations comes on. The distance recorder display line indicates the distance remaining before the next service is due.

Example: 4 800 km remain before the next service is due.

For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the display indicates:

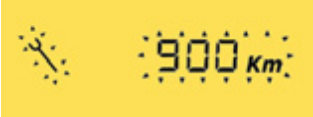


5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, **the spanner goes off**; the distance recorder resumes its normal operation. The display then indicates the total and trip distances.

Less than 1 000 km remain before the next service is due

Example: 900 km remain before the next service is due.

For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the display indicates:



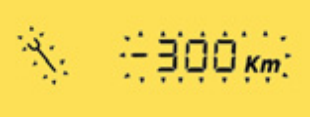
5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the distance recorder resumes its normal operation. **The spanner remains on** to indicate that a service must be carried out soon.

Service overdue

For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, **the spanner flashes** to indicate that the service must be carried out as soon as possible.

Example: the service is overdue by 300 km.

For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the display indicates:



5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the distance recorder resumes its normal operation. **The spanner remains on**.

The distance remaining may be weighted by the time factor, depending on the driver's driving habits.

Therefore, the spanner may also come on if you have exceeded the two year service interval.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Service indicator zero reset

After each service, the service indicator must be reset to zero.

The procedure for resetting to zero is as follows:

☞ switch off the ignition,

☞ press and hold the trip distance recorder zero reset button,

☞ switch on the ignition; the distance recorder display begins a countdown,

☞ when the display indicates **"=0"**, release the button; the spanner disappears.

Following this operation, if you wish to disconnect the battery, lock the vehicle and wait at least five minutes for the zero reset to be taken into account.

Engine oil level indicator

System which informs the driver whether the engine oil level is correct or not.

This information is displayed for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on, after the service information.

The level read will only be correct if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been off for more than 30 minutes.

Oil level correct

oil ok

Oil level low

oil

This is indicated by the flashing of **"OIL"**, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multi-function screen.

If the low oil level is confirmed by a check using the dipstick, it is essential that the level is topped up to prevent damage to the engine.

Oil level gauge fault

oil --

This is indicated by the flashing of **"OIL--"**. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Dipstick

Refer to the "Checks" section to locate the dipstick and the oil filler cap on your engine.

There are 2 marks on the dipstick:

- **A** = max; never exceed this level (risk of engine damage),
- **B** = min; top up the level via the oil filler, using the type of oil suited to your engine.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Distance recorders

The total and trip distances are displayed for thirty seconds when the ignition is switched off, when the driver's door is opened and when the vehicle is locked or unlocked.

Total distance recorder

Measures the total distance travelled by the vehicle since its first registration.

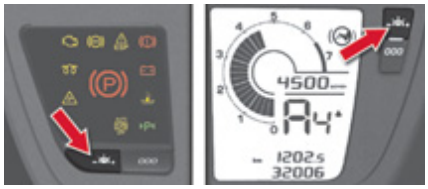
Trip distance recorder

Measures a distance travelled since it was reset to zero by the driver.

☞ With the ignition on, press and hold this button until zeros appear.

Lighting dimmer

Permits manual adjustment of the brightness of the instruments and controls to suit the ambient light level. Only operates when the vehicle lighting is on, with the exception of the daytime running lamps.



Activation

☞ Press the button to change the brightness of the instruments and controls.

☞ When the lighting reaches the minimum setting, release the button, then press again to increase it.

or

☞ When the lighting reaches the maximum setting, release the button, then press again to reduce it.

☞ When the lighting reaches the level of brightness required, release the button.

Deactivation

When the vehicle lighting is off, or in day mode on vehicles fitted with daytime running lamps, pressing the button does not have any effect.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

MONOCHROME SCREEN A

Displays in the screen

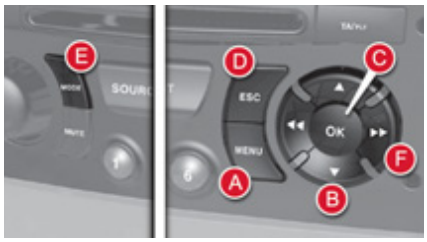
This screen can display the following information:

- time
- date
- ambient temperature
  When the ambient temperature is between +3 °C and -3 °C, the temperature display flashes (risk of ice). The ambient temperature displayed may be higher than the actual temperature if the vehicle is parked in the sun.
- the current audio source,
- trip computer (see the end of the section).

Alert messages (e.g.: "Antipollution system faulty") or information messages (e.g.: "Boot open") may appear temporarily. They can be removed by pressing **"ESC"**.

> For safety reasons, configuration of the multifunction screen by the driver must only be done when stationary.

Controls



A. Access to the "Main menu".
B. Navigation in the screen menus.
C. Confirmation of the selection of a function in a menu or of a value modified.
D. Cancellation the current operation.
E. Selection of the type of information (date, audio-CD and trip computer).
B or **F.** In the menus, navigation, choice of activation/deactivation of functions and choice of settings.

Main Menu

☞ Press button **A**, then using **B**, you have access to the following menus:
- radio-CD
- vehicle config
- options
- display adjust
- languages
- units

☞ Press button **C** to confirm.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Radio-CD

With the Audio system on, you can activate or deactivate functions of the radio (RDS station tracking, REG mode), CD or CD changer (CD introscan, shuffle, repeat).

For more information on the "Radio-CD" application, refer to the Audio system section in "Audio and Telematics".

Vehicle config

The"Vehicle config" menu is used to activate/deactivate the following functions:

- rear wiper coupled to reverse gear (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- guide-me-home and welcome lighting (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- automatic functions (application/ release) of the electric parking brake*,
- selective door locking,
- daytime running lamps (refer to the "Visibility" section).

Options

This menu is used for diagnosis of the state of systems (active, inactive, faulty).

Display adjust

The "Display adjust" menu is used for the following settings:

- year,
- month,
- day,
- hour,
- minutes,
- 12 or 24 hour mode.

Languages

You can select the screen display language (Français, Italiano, Nederlands, Portugues, Portugues-Brasil, Deutsch, English, Espanol).

Units

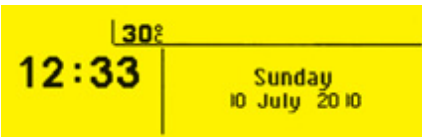
This menu is used to select the units for temperature (°C or °F) and fuel consumption (l/100 km, mpg or km/l).

* Depending on destination country.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

MONOCHROME SCREEN C

Displays in the screen

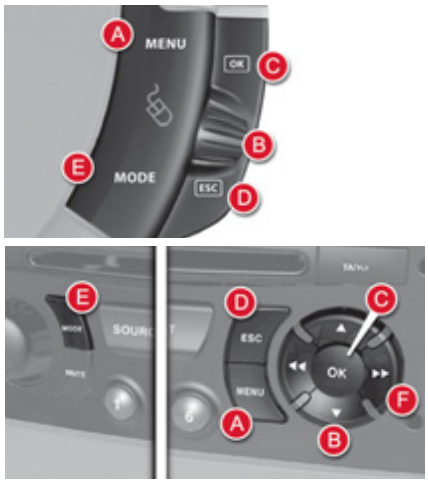


This screen can display the following information:

- time
- date,
- ambient temperature
  When the ambient temperature is between +3 °C and -3 °C, the temperature display flashes (risk of ice). The ambient temperature displayed may be higher than the actual temperature if the vehicle is parked in the sun.
- the current audio source
- trip computer (see the end of the section),
- the results of the parking space measurement,
- visual parking sensors.

Alert messages (e.g.: "Antipollution system faulty") or information messages (e.g.: "Boot open") may appear temporarily. They can be removed by pressing **"ESC"**.

Controls



A. Access to the "Main Menu".

B. Navigation in the screen menus.

C. Selection and confirmation in the menus of the function chosen or the value modified.

D. Cancellation of the current operation.

E. Selection of the type of information (date, radio-CD/audio, telephone and trip computer).

B or **F.** In the menus, navigation, choice of activation/deactivation of functions and choice of settings.

Main Menu

☞ Press button **A**, then using **B**, you have access to the following menu:

- audio functions,
- trip computer,
- personalisation-configuration,
- Bluetooth telephone (hands-free system).

☞ Press button **C** to confirm.

For safety reasons, configuration of the multifunction screen by the driver must only be done when stationary.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Audio functions

With the Audio system on, you can activate or deactivate functions associated with the radio (RDS, REG, Radio Text), CD or CD changer (CD introscan, shuffle, repeat).

For more information on the "Audio functions" application, refer to the Audio system section in "Audio and Telematics".

Bluetooth telephone (hands-free system)

With the Audio system on, you can configure your Bluetooth hands-free system (pairing), view the various telephone directories (calls log, services..) and manage calls (call, hang up, double call, secret mode...).

For more information on the "Telephone" application, refer to the Audio system section in "Audio and Telematics".

Trip computer

You can see information on the state of the vehicle.

Warning log

This lists alert messages, displaying them successively on the multifunction screen.

Status of functions

This allows diagnosis of the state of systems (active, inactive, faulty).

Enter the distance to destination

You can enter a value for the distance to your final destination.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Personalisation - Configuration

This menu is used to activate/deactivate the following functions:

- define the vehicle parameters,
- display configuration,
- choice of language.

Define the vehicle parameters

You can activate or deactivate the following systems:

- rear wiper coupled with reverse gear (refer to the "Visibilty" section),
- automatic guide-me-home lighting,
- directional headlamps,
- automatic functions (application/release) of the electric parking brake*
- selective door locking,
- daytime running lamps (refer to the "Visibilty" section),

Display configuration

You can make the following adjustments:

- video brightness,
- date and time,
- choice of units.

Choice of language

You can change the screen display language (Deutsch, English, Espanol, Français, Italiano, Nederlands, Portugues, Portugues-Brasil, Türkçe*).

II

* Depending on destination country.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

MyWay MULTIFUNCTION SCREEN

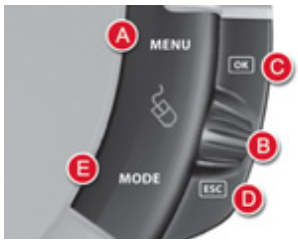
Displays in the screen

This screen can display the following information:

- time,
- date,
- ambient temperature

  When the ambient temperature is between +3 °C and -3 °C, the display flashes (risk of ice). The temperature displayed may be higher that the actual temperature if the vehicle has been parked in the sun.
- warning and vehicle function status messages, displayed temporarily,
- audio functions,
- trip computer (see the end of the section),
- result of the parking space measurement,
- visual parking sensor information,
- satellite navigation system information.

Controls



You can press:

A. Opens a contextual menu.

B. Navigation through the screen menus.

C. Confirmation of the selection made in a menu or a modified value.

D. Abandon the current operation.

E. Selection of main display (date, radio-CD/audio, telephone, map, navigation and trip computer).

B or **F.** In the menus, navigation, select activation/deactivation of functions and select settings.

Menus in the control panel

To select one of the applications:

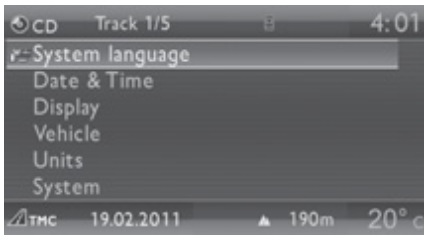
☞ press the dedicated **"RADIO"**, **"MUSIC"**, **"NAV"**, **"TRAFFIC"**, **"SETUP"** or **"PHONE"** button to open the corresponding menu,

For more information on these applications, refer to the "Audio and Telematics" section.

For safety reasons, configuration of the multifunction screen by the driver must only be done when stationary.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SETUP menu



☞ Press the **"SETUP"** button to open the configuration menu. This allows you to select from the following functions:
- "System language",
- "Date and time",
- "Display",
- "Vehicle",
- "Units",
- "System".

System language

This menu allows you to select the language used by the display: Deutsch, English, Espanol, Français, Italiano, Nederlands, Polski, Portugues, Türkçe*.

Date and time

This menu allows you to set the date and time, the format of the date and the format of the time (refer to the "Audio and Telematics" section.

Display

This menu allows you to set the brightness of the screen, the screen colour scheme and the colour of the map (day/night or auto mode).

Vehicle

This menu allows you to activate or deactivate certain driving and comfort equipment:
- wiper linked with reverse gear (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- guide-me-home lighting (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- directional headlamp lighting (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- interior mood lighting (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- electric parking brake automatic functions (automatic application/release)*,
- selective door locking,
- daytime running lamps (refer to the "Visibility" section),

Units

This menu allows you to select the units: temperature (°C or °F) and consumption (km/l, l/100 or mpg).

System

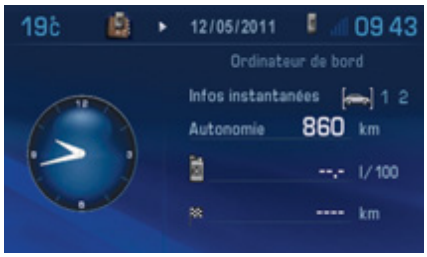
This menu allows you to restore the factory configuration, display the software version and activate scrolling text.

* According to country.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

NAVIDRIVE MULTIFUNCTION SCREEN

Displays in the screen

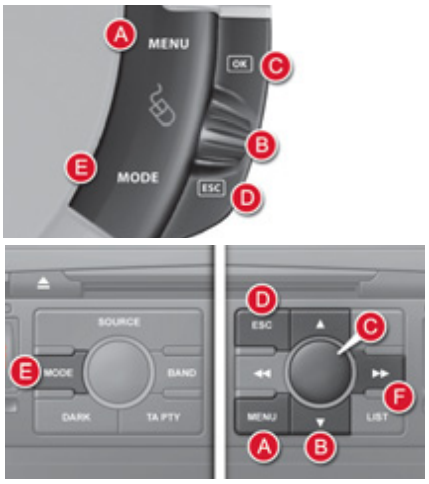


The screen can display the following information:

- time
- date
- ambient temperature
  When the ambient temperature is between +3 °C and -3 °C, the temperature display flashes (risk of ice). The ambient temperature displayed may be higher than the actual temperature if the vehicle is parked in the sun.
- alert messages and state of vehicle systems, displayed temporarily.
- audio functions,
- trip computer (see end of the section),
- results of the parking space measurement,
- visual parking sensors,
- satellite navigation system information.

For safety reasons, configuration of the multifunction screen by the driver must only be done when stationary.

Controls



A. Access to the "Main Menu".

B. Navigation in the screen menus.

C. Selection and confirmation in the menus of the function chosen or the value modified.

D. Cancellation of the current operation or return to the previous display.

E. Selection of the principal display (date, radio-CD/audio, telephone, map, navigation and trip computer).

B or **F.** In the menus, navigation, choice of activation/deactivation of functions and choice of setting.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

MULTIFUNCTION SCREENS

Main Menu

Press button **A** to display the "Main Menu":

Navigation/Guidance

Map

Traffic Information

Audio Functions

Telematics

Configuration,
to configure the screen (date, time...) and define vehicle parameters

Video

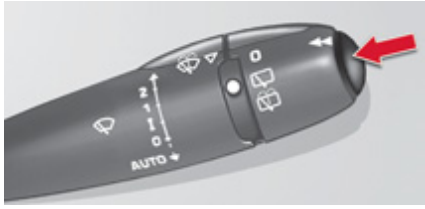
Vehicle Diagnostics
- "Alert log",
- "Status of functions".

TRIP COMPUTER

System which provides current information concerning the trip travelled (range, fuel consumption...).

Monochrome screen A

Information displays



☞ Press the button, located at the end of the **wiper stalk**, to display the various items of trip computer data in succession.

The trip computer provides the following information:
- range,
- current fuel consumption,
- distance travelled,
- average fuel consumption,
- average speed.

☞ The next press then returns you to the normal display.

Zero reset

☞ Press the control for more than two seconds to reset to zero the distance travelled, the average fuel consumption and the average speed.

II

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

TRIP COMPUTER

System which provides current information concerning the route travelled (range, fuel consumption, ...) in the multifunction screen.

Monochrome screen C

MyWay or NaviDrive colour screen

Display of information

☞ Press the button, located at the end of the **wiper stalk**, to display the various trip computer information groups in succession:

- the current information group with:
  - range,
  - current fuel consumption,
  - distance remaining to be travelled/Stop & Start time counter,

- the trip **"1"** group with:
  - distance travelled,
  - average fuel consumption,
  - average speed,

  for the first trip.

- the trip **"2"** group with:
  - the distance travelled,
  - the average fuel consumption,
  - the average speed,

  for the second trip.

Trip zero reset

☞ When the trip required is displayed, press the control for more than two seconds.

Trips **"1"** and **"2"** are independent but their use is identical.

For example, trip **"1"** can be used for daily figures and trip **"2"** for monthly figures.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

A few definitions...

Range
(miles or km)

This indicates the distance which can still be travelled with the fuel remaining in the tank in relation to the average fuel consumption over the last few miles (kilometres) travelled.

This value may vary following a change in the style of driving or the relief, resulting in a significant change in the current fuel consumption.

When the range falls below 20 miles (30 km), dashes are displayed. After filling with at least 5 litres of fuel, the range is recalculated and is displayed when it exceeds 60 miles (100 km).

If dashes are displayed continuously while driving in place of the digits, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Current fuel consumption
(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)

This is the average fuel consumption during the last few seconds.

This function is only displayed from 20 mph (30 km/h).

Average fuel consumption
(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)

This is the average fuel consumption since the last trip computer zero reset.

Average speed
(mph or km/h)

This is the average speed calculated since the last trip computer zero reset (ignition on).

Distance travelled
(miles or km)

This indicates the distance travelled since the last trip computer zero reset.

Distance remaining to destination
(miles or km)

This is the distance remaining to be travelled to the final destination. It is either calculated instantly by the navigation system, if guidance is activated, or entered by the user.

If the distance is not entered, dashes are displayed in place of the digits.

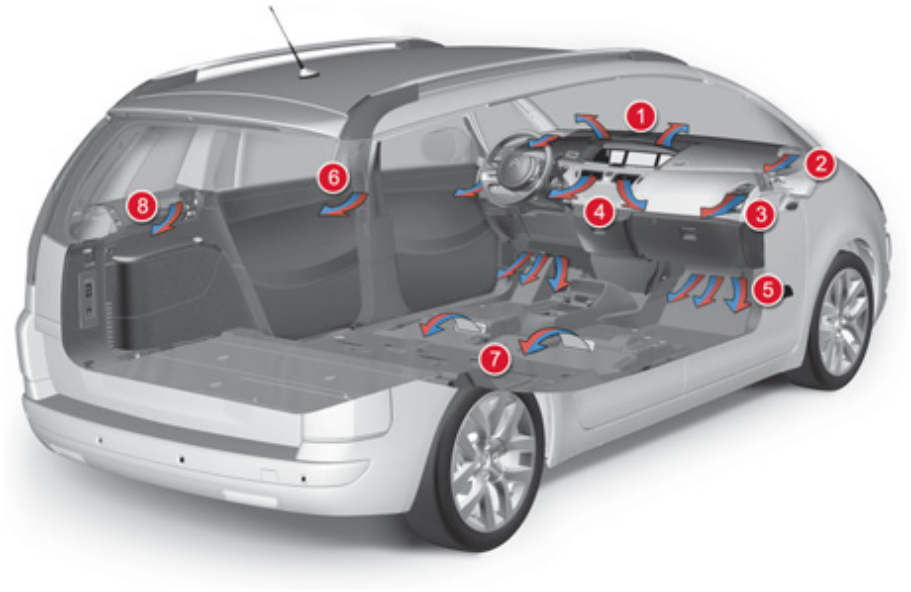
Stop & Start time counter
(minutes/seconds or hours/minutes)

If your vehicle is fitted with Stop & Start, a time counter calculates the time spent in STOP mode during a journey.

It resets to zero every time the ignition is switched on with the key.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

RECOMMENDED SETTINGS FOR VENTILATION, HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING



Air intake

Check that the exterior grille for the air intake at the bottom of the windscreen, is clean and free of dead leaves, snow, etc.

Air distribution

1. Windscreen demisting/defrosting vents.
2. Front quarter light window demisting/defrosting vents.
3. Front side window demisting/defrosting vents.
   Adjustable side air vents.
4. Adjustable central air vents.
5. Front passenger footwell air outlets.
6. Adjustable 2nd row side air vents, with air flow and temperature adjustment.
7. Rear passenger footwell air outlets.
8. Adjustable 3rd row side air vents.

The side air vents **8** apply only to the 7-seater versions.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Air vents

The air vents to the face have grilles and thumb wheels to adjust the air flow and direction (up-down, right-left).

Air circulation

Air vents on the floor underneath the front seats provide enhanced heating for the rear seat positions; take care not to obstruct them.

Dust filter/Odour filter (active carbon)

There is a filter for excluding odours and dust.

This filter has to be changed in accordance with the vehicle's servicing schedule (see the servicing booklet).

Air conditioning

To ensure that your system operates correctly, it is recommended that you have it checked regularly.

Water arising from condensation in the air conditioning drains away through a hole provided for this purpose. A pool of water may thus form under the vehicle when stationary.

To preserve the sealing of the air conditioning compressor, operate the air conditioning at least once a month.

Regardless of the season, the air conditioning is useful, since it removes humidity and condensation.

To be effective, the air conditioning should only be used with the windows closed.

If after a lengthy stop in bright sunlight the interior temperature is excessive, air the passenger compartment by opening the windows for a few moments, then close them again.

The air conditioning operates by using power from the engine. This results in a slight increase in fuel consumption.

Sensors

The automatic regulation of the air conditioning in the passenger compartment uses a number of sensors (sunshine sensor, ambient temperature sensor...) that relieve you of the need to make frequent adjustments to the displayed temperature.

Take care not to obstruct the sunshine sensor, located on the dashboard behind the instrument panel.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

MANUAL AIR CONDITIONING

The air conditioning system operates with the engine running.

A. DRIVER'S CONTROL PANEL

1. Adjustment of the air fan speed

The air fan adjustment only operates when the engine is running.

To adjust the air flow, press button **1**:

to increase the flow of air,

to decrease the flow of air.

The level of air flow is shown by the progressive lighting of the warning lamps depicting the fan blades **1**.

By reducing the flow to minimum, you deactivate the air conditioning system (OFF).

To maintain an acceptable level of comfort in the passenger compartment, you should not leave this control too long in the OFF position.

2. Adjustment of air distribution

☞ Press button **2** to make the display run through the different types of air distribution.

The air distribution chosen is shown by the lighting of the corresponding warning lamps on the display **2**.

3. Mode of adjustment of temperature for the passenger

☞ Press button **3** to have independent passenger control of cabin air temperature. The warning lamp goes off.

While the passenger is adjusting temperature, the warning lamp comes on.

4. Air recirculation

This control is for isolating disagreeable odours or fumes coming from outside.

☞ Press button **4** to cut off the intake of outside air and to activate recirculation of the air in the passenger compartment. The warning lamp comes on.

Avoid the extended use of air recirculation (risk of deterioration of air quality and misting).

☞ Press button **4** again to allow the intake of exterior air. The warning lamp goes off.

5. Air conditioning

The air fan control (adjusting the flow of air) has to be activated in order for air conditioning to be obtained.

☞ Press button **5**. The warning lamp comes on.

To be effective, the air conditioning should be operated **only** with the windows closed.

If your vehicle is not equipped with air conditioning, you will have the same control panel but without the **A/C** button.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

6. Demisting/defrosting the rear screen

This function operates only if the engine is running.

☞ Press button **6** to activate/deactivate the electric demisting/defrosting of the rear screen and door mirrors. The warning lamp comes on.

The demisting/defrosting switches off automatically to prevent excessive consumption of power.

7. Rapid demisting/defrosting of front and rear windows and door mirrors

☞ Press button **7**. The warning lamp comes on.

This function simultaneously activates:

- front demisting/defrosting,
- optimum flow of air,
- intake of exterior air,
- demisting/defrosting of door mirrors and heated rear screen,
- air conditioning, if necessary.

To stop the function, press button **7** again.

8. Adjustment of the fan air temperature

This control is for adjusting the temperature of the air in the passenger compartment. It can be used in cold weather as well as in hot weather, provided the air conditioning is active.

The adjustment of the temperature is continuous and progressive starting from left to right.

B. PASSENGER'S CONTROL PANEL

Adjustment of temperature

☞ Press button **9** to take control of the temperature. The warning lamp comes on.

☞ Rotate button **10** to adjust your temperature.

The adjustment of the temperature is continuous and progressive starting from left to right.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

DIGITAL AIR CONDITIONING

The air conditioning system operates with the engine running.

A. DRIVER'S CONTROL PANEL

1. Automatic comfort regulation

AUTO

A press on this button, confirmed by the display of the **A/C** warning lamp and of **AUTO** on the screen, provides automatic control, at the temperature selected, of all the following 5 functions:

- air flow,
- passenger compartment temperature, left and right,
- air distribution,
- air conditioning,
- automatic air recirculation.

For this facility to operate, it is recommended that all air vents are kept open.

Using the **AUTO** mode will prevent the formation of mist inside the vehicle in cold or humid weather.

When starting from cold, in order to avoid a rush of cold air, the air fan attains its optimum level progressively.

Manual resumption of one or more functions

It is possible to adjust each of the functions **3, 4**, **6** and **10** manually. The display of the **"AUTO"** function will then go off.

Resumption by the driver of the adjustment of passenger compartment temperatures (for the front and rear passengers)

A long press on the "AUTO" button cancels all personal settings, including the passenger's temperature, and returns the system to automatic operation

2. Adjustment of temperature

To display the desired temperature, press button:

- **-** to decrease the temperature,
- **+** to increase the temperature.

A setting around 21 will provide an agreeable temperature level. However, depending on your preference, anything between 18 and 24 is quite normal.

For optimum comfort, it is recommended to avoid a difference of settings of more than than 3 between right and left.

Actual temperatures experienced in the passenger compartment are dependent on external factors and for this reason might not be identical to those displayed.

On entering the vehicle, the inside temperature may be much colder (or hotter) than would be comfortable. It serves no purpose to alter the temperature displayed in an attempt to attain your preference more rapidly. The system operates automatically to correct the difference in temperature as soon as possible.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

3. Adjustment of air fan speed/Activation of the "REST" function

Adjustment of air flow

To adjust the flow of air, press the button:

to increase the air flow,

to decrease the air flow (this button also has the REST function).

The level of air flow is indicated on the display by the progressive filling of the fan blades.

If you place the air fan on position **0**, the system is deactivated. The air fan display will be empty, with the indication OFF.

"REST" function: activation of ventilation, engine off

To allow a degree of comfort in the passenger compartment while the engine is off, you can operate the ventilation for a few minutes using the "REST" function.

When you leave the vehicle, any passengers present can still have the benefit of air circulation, even though the engine is not running.

This function is available when you switch on the ignition as well as when you stop the engine.

The air conditioning control screens come on and the symbol representing the air fan is displayed while the function is available.

On switching on the ignition:

- A press on the REST button activates the function for a period of a few minutes. Two blades of the fan will fill to indicate that the function is active.
- The function can be deactivated and reactivated during the timed period.
- At the end of the timed period, the screen will go off.

On switching off the engine:

- The function can be activated during a period of 30 seconds.
- A press on the REST button activates the function for period of several minutes. The duration and availability of the function depends on the state of charge of the battery. Locking the vehicle has no effect on the function.
- A further press before the end of the period of operation stops the function definitively.

This button does not activate the air conditioning, only the air fans. While the REST function is active, the air flow and distribution cannot be modified.

4. Adjustment of air distribution

☞ Press button **4** to scroll through the air distribution settings on the screen.

The air distribution you have chosen is confirmed by the corresponding indicators in the screen.

There are 7 possible adjustments.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

5. Air recirculation

This button activates the recirculation of air within the passenger compartment and also has an automatic function.

☞ Press button **5** to cut off the intake of air from outside and to activate recycling of the air in the passenger compartment. the warning lamp comes on.

Whilst retaining the other adjustments, this function prevents unpleasant odours or fumes entering the vehicle. Avoid extended use of air recirculation (risk of deterioration of air quality and misting).

☞ Press button **5** again to allow entry of air from the outside. The warning lamp goes off.

Air recirculation can also be controlled by pressing the switch located on the lower left of the steering wheel (see "Fixed centred controls steering wheel").

6. Activation/deactivation of rear passenger controls

This button allows you to permit or not the rear passengers to use their adjustment controls.

There are three possible states for this button:

Locking of the rear passenger controls

The driver imposes his adjustment on the rear passengers. In this case, the rear passenger controls are deactivated.

Authorisation of the rear passenger controls

The rear passengers can use their adjustment controls at their convenience.

Reduction of the air flow for the rear passengers

With additional air conditioning, in cold weather you are advised to close the supply of air to the rear passengers (no hot air distribution possible via these air vents).

7. Panel display mode: black panel function

This function turns the screen and switch backlighting on or off.

- Function activated, pressing any button will illuminate the screen temporarily.
- pressing button **7** deactivates the function, the illumination of of buttons and screen is again permanent.

This function optimises notably the visual comfort for driving at night.

8. Demisting/defrosting the rear screen

This function is active only when the engine is running.

☞ Press on button **8** to activate/deactivate the electric demisting/defrosting of the rear screen and, according to version, of the door mirrors. The warning lamp comes on and the symbol appears in the screen.

It switches off automatically to prevent excessive consumption of power.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

9. Rapid demisting/defrosting of the front and rear windows

- Press button **9**. The warning lamp comes on.

This function gives a rapid demisting/defrosting of the vehicle simultaneously with:

- front demisting/defrosting at optimum temperature,
- optimum air flow,
- intake of exterior air,
- demisting/defrosting of the door mirrors and rear screen,
- air conditioning, if necessary.

Press button **9** again or **"AUTO"** to stop the function. Demisting/defrosting of the door mirrors and rear screen remains activated.

With Stop & Start, when demisting has been activated, the STOP mode is not available.

10. Air conditioning

☞ Press button **10** to activate the air conditioning.

The **A/C** warning lamp comes on.

B. PASSENGER CONTROL PANELS

11. Front passenger

The front passenger can adjust their temperature control independently at any time by pressing buttons **+** and **-**.

The front passenger controls the adjustment of their own temperature.

The temperature setting for the passenger is aligned with that for the driver.

12. Rear passengers (right/left)

By default, in **AUTO** position, the adjustment of the air flow is aligned on the front ventilation.

☞ Rotate the button to decrease or increase the air flow.

You can adjust the air flow only if this is enabled by the driver (see button **6** of the driver's control panel).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ADDITIONAL AIR CONDITIONING

Additional air conditioning allows you to optimise comfort levels in warm weather conditions. It produces additional fresh air which is supplied using the rear air vents. The supply of warm air via the rear air vents is not possible using this system.

C. REAR PASSENGER CONTROL PANELS (RIGHT/LEFT)

13. Adjustment of temperature

The rear passengers can adjust their temperature controls independently via buttons **+** and **-**.

Their setting cannot be greater than that of the driver by more than 2. Attainment of this maximum setting is confirmed by the flashing of its display.

14. Adjustment of air fan speed

The air fan operates only when the engine is running.

To adjust the flow of air, press on button:

to increase the air flow,

to decrease the air flow.

The level of air flow is indicated on the display by the progressive filling of the fan blades.

By reducing the flow to minimum, you switch off the air conditioning system (OFF).

You can adjust the temperature and the air flow only if the driver enables you to (see button **6** of the driver's control panel).

This warning lamp signifies that **the passenger controls are locked**, you can adjust neither the temperature nor the air flow, which remain aligned on the preferences of the driver.

OFF This warning lamp indicates that the **supply of air is cut off**.

This position is recommended in cold weather conditions, as the air vents do not supply warm air.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SCENTED AIR FRESHENER

The scented air freshener releases a fragrance into the passenger compartment via the central air vents.

The air freshener contains an empty cartridge when your vehicle is delivered. You therefore need to insert a cartridge in order to use the air freshener.

Adjustment of flow

☞ Rotate the button **A** to adjust (to the left to reduce, to the right to increase) or stop (maximum to the left) the flow of scented air.

The central air vents have to be open.

A cartridge lasts on average 3 months, based on one hour's usage per day.

To remove the air freshener

☞ Press the button **A**, rotating it a quarter turn to the left as far as it will go.

☞ Remove the air freshener from the dashboard.

☞ Replace the cartridge (see "Replacing a cartridge").

To insert the air freshener

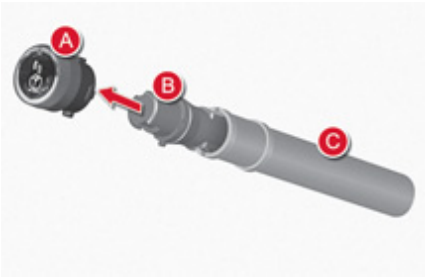
After fitting or changing a cartridge:

☞ place the air freshener back in its housing.

☞ rotate it a quarter turn to the right.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Replacing a cartridge

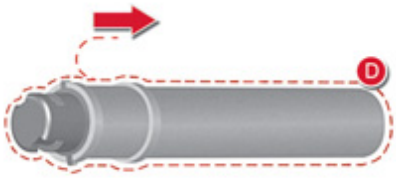


The recharge for the air freshener consists of a cartridge **B** and its sealed container **C**.

- ☞ Remove the protective film **D**.
- ☞ Place the head of the cartridge **B** on the button **A** of the air freshener.
- ☞ Rotate it a quarter turn to lock it on the button and remove the container.
- ☞ Insert the air freshener into its housing.

You can change cartridges at any time, keeping the used cartridges in their original containers.

Air freshener button



The air freshener button **A** is independent of the cartridge. Cartridges are supplied without the air freshener button **A**.

The button of the air freshener **A** can only be fitted to the centre of the dashboard with a cartridge attached.

Therefore always keep the air freshener button **A** and one cartridge.

Replacement cartridges are available, depending on country, either on the Internet site or from a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Locations are provided in the glove box for storing cartridges and containers.

For safety, use only cartridges that are provided for this purpose.

Retain the containers for storing used cartridges.

Do not recharge or dismantle the cartridges.

Keep them out of reach of children and animals.

Avoid all contact with the skin and with the eyes.

In the event of ingestion, consult a doctor and show them the product packaging or label.

Do not install or remove a cartridge while you are driving.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

FRONT SEATS

MANUAL ADJUSTMENTS

1. Forwards-backwards adjustment

Raise the control bar, then slide the seat to the position desired.

2. Lumbar support

Rotate the control until you attain the position desired.

3. Seat height adjustment

Raise or lower the the control the number of times necessary to obtain the position desired.

4. Backrest angle

Operate the control and adjust the angle of the backrest.

It is possible to incline the backrest 45° rearwards by tilting it until it locks; to unlock it, lift the control.

5. Armrest

To adjust the position of the armrest, pull it up and then fully down, and then raise it to the desired position.

6. Head restraint

To raise it, pull it upwards. To lower it, press on the control as well as on the head restraint.

The adjustment is correct when the top of the head restraint is level with the top of the head.

It can also be adjusted for tilt (depending on version).

To remove it, press on the unlocking button and pull it upwards.

To adjust the head restraint forwards/backwards, move the base of the head restraint to obtain the position desired.

Never drive without the head restraints fitted. They must be in place and adjusted correctly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

FRONT SEATS

ELECTRIC ADJUSTMENTS

1. Adjustment of the seat height and angle, forwards-backwards

Raise or lower the front of control to raise or lower the front of the seat base (on driver's seat).

Raise or lower the rear of control to raise or lower the seat.

Action control forwards or backwards to slide the seat forwards/backwards.

2. Adjustment of backrest angle and lumbar support

Push the top of control forwards or backwards to adjust the backrest angle.

Raise or lower control to increase or decrease the lumbar support.

The seats can also be adjusted electrically for a short period:

- on opening one of the front doors,
- after switching off the ignition.

Heated seats control

With the engine running, the front seats can be heated individually.

☞ Use the corresponding adjustment wheel, placed on the inner side of each front seat, to switch on and select the level of heating required:

0: Off.

1: Low.

2: Medium.

3: High.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Storing driving positions

System which registers the electrical settings of the driver's seat and door mirrors. It enables you to store and recall two positions using the buttons on the side of the driver's seat.

Storing a position

Using buttons M/1/2

☞ Switch on the ignition.

☞ Adjust your seat and the door mirrors.

☞ Press button **M**, then press button **1** or **2** within four seconds.

An audible signal indicates that the position has been stored.

Storing a new position cancels the previous position.

Recalling a stored position

Ignition on or engine running

☞ Press button **1** or **2** to recall the corresponding position.

An audible signal indicates the end of the adjustment.

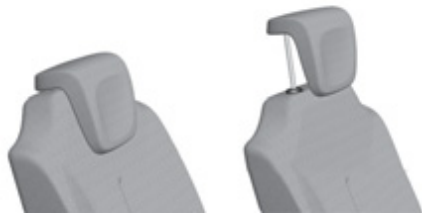
You can interrupt the current movement by pressing button **M**, **1** or **2** or by using one of the seat controls.

A stored position cannot be recalled while driving.

Recalling stored positions is deactivated 45 seconds after switching off the ignition.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

REAR HEAD RESTRAINTS



The rear head restraints can be removed and have two positions:

- high, position for use,
- low, storage position.

To raise a head restraint, pull it upwards.

To lower it, press the lug then the head restraint.

To remove it, place it in the high position, push the lug and pull it upwards.

To refit it, engage the head restraint rods in the holes taking care to remain in line with the seat back.

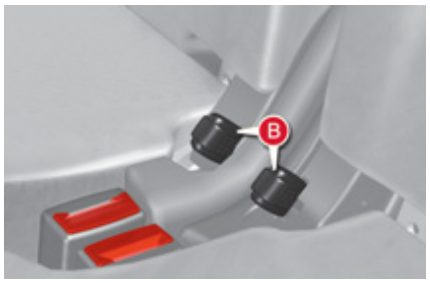
Never drive with the head restraints removed, they must be in place and correctly adjusted.

SECOND ROW SEATS

Forwards-backwards adjustment

Lift the control **A**, located at the front of the seat, then move the seat to the desired position.

"Comfort" position



The 3 second-row seats are independent of each other and all the same width. They all can have a "comfort" position.

Placing a seat in the "comfort" position

☞ Pull on the control **B** and guide the seat rearwards.

The backrest reclines and the seat base pivots slightly.

Returning the seat to the initial position

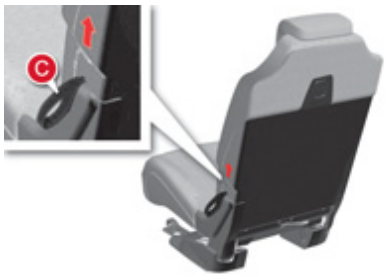
☞ Pull on the control **B** and allow the seat to come forwards.

Always supervise any movements of seats by children.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SECOND ROW SEATS (C4 PICASSO)

Folding a seat



Each seat can be folded onto the floor to enable you to modify your vehicle's interior space.

☞ Pull firmly upwards on strap **C**, as indicated by the red arrow, to unlock the seat; keep pulling until the seat is fully folded.

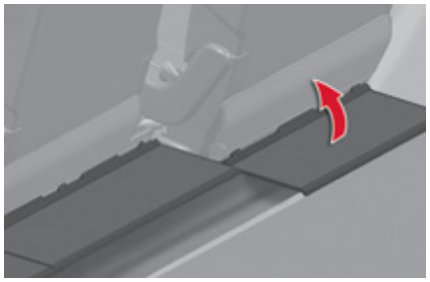
Push the seat backrest gently forwards so that the backrest folds onto the seat cushion. The assembly lowers onto the floor.

Repositioning a seat

☞ Raise the backrest and push it rearwards until it locks in position

Always supervise any movements of seats by children.

Panels behind the second row seats



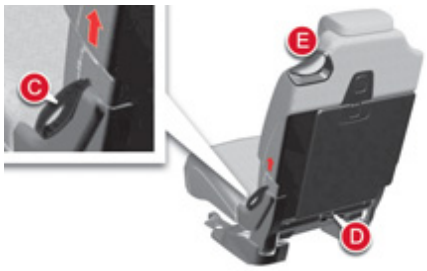
Panels below the second row seats provide the bottom of the boot space with rigidity. They automatically follow the seat movements (e.g. forwards-backwards adjustment, folding).

A storage area is available underneath the panels.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SECOND ROW REAR SEATS (GRAND C4 PICASSO)

Each seat can be folded onto the floor to form a flat surface, thus enabling you to adapt your vehicle's interior space.



Folding a seat

From the outside

☞ Pull firmly upwards on strap **C**, as indicated by the red arrow, to unlock the seat; keep pulling until the seat is fully folded.

Push the seat backrest gently forwards so that the backrest folds onto the seat cushion. The assembly lowers onto the floor.

From the boot (when loading, for example)

You can fold the second-row seat(s) from the boot, having first folded the third-row seats.

☞ Pull on the strap **D** to unlock the chosen seat, push the backrest gently forwards.

To prevent any damage to the mechanism, the strap **D** unclips under excessive force. Simply clip it back in place to render the system operational.

Repositioning a seat

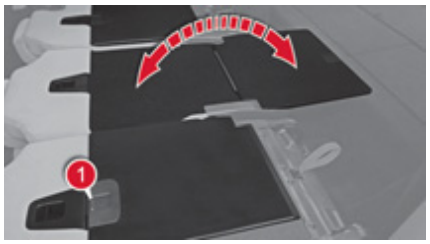
☞ Return the second-row seat rigid panels to their initial position and lock them in position.

☞ Raise the backrest and push it rearwards until it locks in position.

Before moving the third-row seats, return the second-row rigid panels to their initial position and lock them in place.

Never allow children to operate the seats without supervision.

Rigid panel



Each second-row seat backrest has a rigid panel attached.

This panel enables you:

- to have a continuous load surface in the boot, whatever the positions of the seats,
- to avoid having objects sliding under the second-row seats.

Unlocking/Locking the rigid panel

☞ Slide the latch **1** on the panel downwards, to unlock.

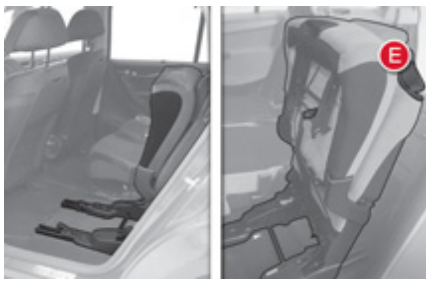
☞ Return the panel to the upright position, then slide the latch **1** upwards, to lock.

Before positioning the rigid panels, check that the second-row seats are in the fully back position.

5-seater configurations do not have these rigid panels.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

"Cinema seat" position



This position allows you to free up space between the first row and the second row.

Pull the lever **E** under the seat.

This position is only possible with the outer seats.

Access to the third row seats

Access to the third-row seats is via the outer second-row seats.

- ☞ Pull the lever **E**. The seat unlocks and the seat cushion comes up against the backrest.
- ☞ Hold the lever **E** in the raised position, pushing forwards. The whole seat slides towards the front seat.

Space becomes free behind the seat, the third-row passengers can get to their seats.

Exit from the third row seats

- ☞ Hold the lever **E** in the raised position. The seat unlocks and the seat cushion comes up against the backrest.
- ☞ Push the seat backrest, still holding the lever **E** in the raised position.

If the table on the back of the first-row seat is down, close it to enable this operation.

Repositioning a seat, from the outside, with the door open

If there are passengers seated in the third row:

- ☞ manually return the assembly as far as possible rearwards; the seat does not return as far as the maximum rearwards position so as to retain legroom for the third-row passengers,
- ☞ fold the seat cushion until it locks.

Ensure that there is no object on or under the seat that you want to move.

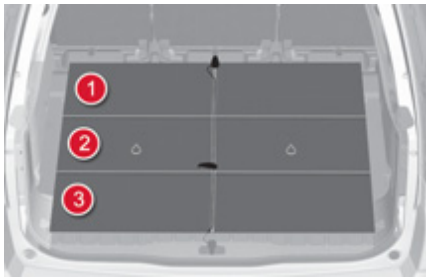
Emergency exit: should the first system fail (strap **C**), use of the lever **E** allows third-row passengers to leave.

Do not allow children to operate the seats without supervision.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

THIRD ROW SEATS (GRAND C4 PICASSO)

Concertina boards



Two rigid concertina boards, which cannot be separated from the vehicle, cover the 2 third-row seats, when these are in the folded position.

Folding the concertina boards

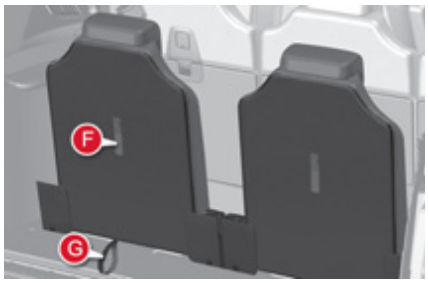
Pull on the control, the 3 sections of the board will fold like a concertina.

When the third-row seats are upright, these concertina boards can be left either:

- flat behind the seats,
- in the vertical position,

thereby leaving a storage area available.

Unfolding the seat



☞ Return the second-row rigid panels to their initial position and lock them.

☞ Having folded your concertina board, pull on the control **F** located behind the seat backrest. The backrest pivots rearwards, pulling the seat base with it. The seat locks in the open position.

Repositioning the seat

☞ Return the second-row rigid panels to their initial position and lock them.

☞ Lower the head restraints.

☞ Correctly position the concertina board vertically behind the seat.

☞ Pull on the control **G**, located at the bottom of the seat backrest. The seat unlocks.

☞ Next push the backrest gently forwards. The backrest pivots, folding onto the seat base. The seat base then folds into the stowage area provided for that purpose.

☞ Reposition the concertina boards over the folded seats.

Before moving the third-row seats, return the rigid plates of the second-row seats to the upright position and lock them.

Do not try to fold a third-row seat that has not first had the backrest fully locked in place.

Do not leave objects either on or underneath the seat bases of the third-row seats when you are folding them.

Do not leave your hand on the control **G** as you fold the seats, as you risk trapping your fingers.

Do not allow children to operate the seats without supervision.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SEAT MODULARITY AND THE VARIOUS CONFIGURATIONS

Examples of C4 Picasso seat configurations

5 seats

3 seats

4 seats

Maximum loadspace

Examples of seat configurations Grand C4 Picasso

7 seats

Maximum loadspace

6 seats

5 seats

4 seats

For easy modification of your interior vehicle space, all the rear seats can be individually folded: onto the second-row floor, and under the third-row floor (in the case of the Grand C4 Picasso). You can then have a load floor that is continuous up to the front seat backrests.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

MIRRORS

Door mirrors

Each mirror is adjustable to provide the rear view needed for overtaking or parking. They can also be folded for parking in confined spaces.

Adjustment

With the ignition on:

- ☞ move control **A** to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror,
- ☞ move control **B** in one of four directions to adjust,
- ☞ return control **A** to the central position.

> The objects observed are, in reality, closer than they appear.
>
> Take this into account in order to correctly judge the distance of vehicles approaching from behind.

The demisting/defrosting of the door mirrors is linked to that of the rear screen.

Folding

- ☞ From outside: lock the vehicle using the remote control or the key.
- ☞ From inside: with the ignition on, pull the control **A** in the central position rearwards.

If the mirrors are folded using control **A**, they will not unfold when the vehicle is unlocked. Pull again on control **A**.

Unfolding

- ☞ From outside: unlock the vehicle using the remote control or the key.
- ☞ From inside: with the ignition on, pull the control **A** in the central position rearwards.

The folding and unfolding of the door mirrors using the remote control can be deactivated by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Never fold or unfold the electric folding mirrors manually.

Automatic tilting in reverse gear

System which provides a view of the ground during parking manoeuvres in reverse gear.

Programming

- ☞ With the engine running, engage reverse gear.
- ☞ Select and adjust the left-hand and right-hand mirrors in succession.

The adjustment is stored immediately.

Switching on

- ☞ With the engine running, engage reverse gear.
- ☞ Move control **A** to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror.

The glass of the mirror selected tilts downwards, in accordance with its programming.

Switching off

- ☞ Exit reverse gear and wait ten seconds.

or

- ☞ Return control **A** to the central position.

The mirror glass returns to its initial position.

The mirror glass also returns to its initial position:

- if the speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h),
- if the engine is switched off.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Rear view mirror

Adjustable mirror providing a central rearward view.

Equipped with an anti-dazzle system, which darkens the mirror glass: this reduces the nuisance to the driver caused by the headlamps from following vehicles, low sun...

Manual day/night model

Adjustment

☞ Adjust the mirror so that the glass is directed correctly in the "day" position.

Day/night position

☞ Pull the lever to change to the "night" anti-dazzle position.

☞ Push the lever to change to the normal "day" position.

As a safety measure, the mirrors should be adjusted to reduce the "blind spot".

Automatic day/night model

By means of a sensor, which measures the light from the rear of the vehicle, this system automatically and progressively changes between the day and night uses.

In order to ensure optimum visibility during your manoeuvres, the mirror lightens automatically when reverse gear is engaged.

STEERING WHEEL ADJUSTMENT

The height and reach of the steering wheel can be adjusted to adapt the driving position to the size of the driver.

Adjustment

☞ First, adjust the driver's seat to the most suitable position.

☞ **When stationary**, pull the control lever to unlock the steering wheel adjustment.

☞ Adjust for height and reach.

☞ Push the control lever to lock the steering wheel adjustment.

After locking, if you press firmly on the steering wheel, a slight click may be heard.

As a safety precaution, these operations must only be carried out while the vehicle is stationary.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

REMOTE CONTROL KEY

System which permits central unlocking or locking of the vehicle using the door lock or remotely. It is also used to locate the vehicle, activate the guide-me-home lighting and start the engine, as well as providing protection against theft.

Unlocking the vehicle

Unfolding the key

☞ First press this button to unfold the key.

Complete unlocking using the remote control

☞ Press the open padlock to unlock the vehicle.

Complete unlocking using the key

☞ Turn the key to the left in the driver's door lock to unlock the vehicle.

Unlocking is confirmed by rapid flashing of the direction indicators for approximately two seconds.

According to version, the door mirrors unfold at the same time.

This also triggers the timed illumination of the exterior side spotlamps and the interior welcome lighting for a period of thirty seconds.

Selective unlocking using the remote control

☞ Press the open padlock once to unlock the driver's door only.

☞ Press the open padlock again to unlock the other doors and the boot.

Unlocking is confirmed by rapid flashing of the direction indicators for approximately two seconds.

According to version, the door mirrors unfold at the same time as the first unlocking action.

It also triggers the timed operation of the exterior side spotlamps and the interior welcome lighting for thirty seconds.

The complete or selective unlocking parameter is set via the multifunction screen configuration menu.

Complete unlocking is activated by default.

Selective unlocking is not available using the key.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Locking the vehicle

Normal locking using the remote control

☞ Briefly press the closed padlock to lock the vehicle.

☞ Make a long press on the closed padlock to lock the vehicle and also close the windows and the panoramic sunroof blind.

Normal locking using the key

☞ Turn the key to the right in the driver's door lock to lock the vehicle.

Locking is confirmed by fixed lighting of the direction indicators for approximately two seconds.

According to version, the door mirrors fold at the same time.

Locking also triggers the timed switching on of the exterior side spotlamps and the guide-me-home lighting, if this is activated.

If one of the doors, the rear screen or the boot is still open, the central locking does not take place.

To allow long objects to be carried, the vehicle can be locked from the inside, using the central locking control on the dashboard, even if the tailgate or rear screen is open.

When the vehicle is locked, if it is unlocked inadvertently, it will lock itself again automatically after thirty seconds unless a door is opened.

When closing the windows and/or panoramic sunroof blind using the remote control, you must ensure that no one prevents them from closing correctly.

The folding and unfolding of the door mirrors using the remote control can be deactivated by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Deadlocking using the remote control

☞ Press the closed padlock to lock the vehicle completely or press the closed padlock for more than two seconds to close the windows and the panoramic sunroof blind automatically in addition to locking.

☞ Press the closed padlock again within five seconds to deadlock the vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Deadlocking using the key

☞ Turn the key to the right in the driver's door lock to lock the vehicle completely and hold it in this position for more than two seconds to close the windows automatically in addition to locking.

☞ Turn the key to the right again within five seconds to deadlock the vehicle.

Deadlocking is confirmed by fixed lighting of the direction indicators for approximately two seconds.

According to version, the door mirrors fold at the same time.

Deadlocking also triggers the timed illumination of the exterior side spot lamps and guide-me-home lighting, if this is activated.

Deadlocking renders the exterior and interior door controls inoperative.

It also deactivates the manual central control button.

Therefore, never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.

Folding the key

☞ First press this button to fold the key.

If you do not press the button when folding the key, there is a risk of damage to the mechanism.

Locating your vehicle

This function allows you to identify your vehicle from a distance, especially when the light is poor. Your vehicle must be locked.

☞ Press the closed padlock on the remote control.

This will bring on the courtesy lamps and exterior side spotlamps, as well as flashing the direction indicators for a few seconds.

Remote operation of lighting

A press on this button brings on the temporary illumination of sidelamps, dipped beam headlamps, number plate lamps and the exterior side spotlamps located underneath the door mirrors.

A second press before the end of the timed period cancels the command.

Anti-theft protection

Electronic engine immobiliser

The key contains an electronic chip which has a special code. When the ignition is switched on, this code must be recognised in order for starting to be possible.

This electronic engine immobiliser locks the engine management system a few minutes after the ignition is switched off and prevents starting of the engine by anyone who does not have the key.

SERVICE

In the event of a fault, you are informed by illumination of this warning lamp, an audible signal and a message in the screen.

In this case, your vehicle will not start; contact a CITROËN dealer as soon as possible.

Keep safely the label attached to the keys given to you on acquisition of the vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

STARTING

1. "S": Steering lock

To unlock the steering, gently move the steering wheel while turning the key, without forcing it.

2. "M": Ignition on

Depending on the version of your vehicle, the orange and red warning lamps should also come on for a short time.

3. "D": Starter

Release the key as soon the engine has started.

If the first attempt fails, switch off the ignition. Wait ten seconds then operate the starter again.

Steering lock

1. **"S":** After removing the key, turn the steering wheel to lock the steering. The key can only be removed in position **S**.
2. **"M":** Ignition switched on, the steering is unlocked (by turning the key to position **M**, move the steering wheel gently if necessary).
3. **"D":** Starter position.

Never turn the key to this position when the engine is running.

Do not run the engine in an enclosed space or where there is insufficient ventilation.

You must always to keep the engine running when moving in order to retain braking and steering power assistance.

Never remove the ignition key before the vehicle has come to a complete stop.

Key left in position "M" audible warning

If you forget to remove the key from the ignition, the ignition is switched off automatically after one hour.

To switch the ignition back on, turn the key to position **S** then back to position **M**.

STOPPING

Vehicles equipped with a turbocharger

Never stop the engine without having allowed it to run for a few seconds at idle, this being the time required for the turbocharger to return to a normal speed.

Flicking the accelerator at the moment of switching off the ignition could cause serious damage.

A heavy object (key fob...), attached to the key and weighing down on its shaft in the ignition switch, could cause a malfunction.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Remote control problems

Following disconnection of the vehicle battery, replacement of the remote control battery or in the event of a remote control malfunction, you can no longer unlock, lock or locate your vehicle.

☞ First of all, use the key in the lock to unlock or lock your vehicle.

☞ Then, reinitialise the remote control.

Reinitialisation

☞ Switch off the ignition.

☞ Turn the key to position **2 (Ignition on)**.

☞ Press the closed padlock immediately for a few seconds.

☞ Switch off the ignition and remove the key from the ignition switch.

The remote control is fully operational again.

Changing the battery

Battery ref.: CR1620/3 volts.

SERVICE If the remote control battery is flat, you are informed by lighting of this warning lamp, an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen.

☞ Unclip the casing using a coin at the notch.

☞ Slide the flat battery out of its location.

☞ Slide the new battery into its location observing the original direction.

☞ Clip the casing together.

☞ Reinitialise the remote control.

If the problem persists, contact a CITROËN dealer as soon as possible.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Lost keys

Visit a CITROËN dealer with the vehicle's registration document, your personal identification documents and if possible the key code label.

The CITROËN dealer will be able to find the key code and the transponder code required to order a new key.

Remote control

The high frequency remote control is a sensitive system; do not operate it while it is in your pocket as there is a possibility that it may unlock the vehicle, without you being aware of it.

Do not repeatedly press the buttons of your remote control out of range and out of sight of your vehicle. You run the risk of stopping it from working and the remote control would have to be reinitialised.

The remote control does not operate when the key is in the ignition switch, even when the ignition is switched off, except for reinitialisation.

Locking the vehicle

Driving with the doors locked may make access to the passenger compartment by the emergency services more difficult in an emergency.

As a safety precaution (with children on board), remove the key from the ignition switch when you leave the vehicle, even for a short time.

Anti-theft protection

Do not make any modifications to the electronic engine immobiliser system; this could cause malfunctions.

When purchasing a second-hand vehicle

Have the pairing of all of the keys in your possession checked by a CITROËN dealer, to ensure that only your keys can be used to open and start the vehicle.

Do not throw the remote control batteries away, they contain metals which are harmful to the environment.

Take them to an approved collection point.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ALARM

System which protects and provides a deterrent against theft and break-ins. It provides the following types of monitoring.

- Exterior perimeter

The system checks for opening of the vehicle.

The alarm is triggered if anyone tries to open a door, the boot, the bonnet...

- Interior volumetric

The system checks for any variation in the volume in the passenger compartment.

The alarm is triggered if anyone breaks a window, enters the passenger compartment or moves inside the vehicle.

Self-protection function

The system checks for the putting out of service of its components.

The alarm is triggered if the battery, the central control or the wires of the siren are put out of service or damaged.

For all work on the alarm system, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Locking the vehicle with full alarm system

Activation

☞ Switch off the ignition and get out of the vehicle.

☞ Press the locking button on the remote control.

The monitoring system is active: the indicator lamp in the button flashes once per second.

After the locking button on the remote control is pressed, the exterior perimeter monitoring is activated after a delay of 5 seconds and the interior volumetric monitoring after a delay of 45 seconds.

If an opening (door, boot...) is not closed fully, the vehicle is not locked but the exterior perimeter monitoring will be activated after a delay of 45 seconds at the same time as the interior volumetric monitoring.

Deactivation

☞ Press the unlocking button on the remote control.

The alarm system is deactivated: the indicator lamp in the button goes off.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Locking the vehicle with exterior perimeter monitoring only

Deactivate the interior volumetric monitoring to avoid unwanted triggering of the alarm in certain cases such as:

- leaving a pet in the vehicle,
- leaving a window partially open,
- washing your vehicle,

Deactivation of the interior volumetric monitoring

☞ Switch off the ignition.

☞ Within ten seconds, press the button until the indicator lamp is on continuously.

☞ Get out of the vehicle.

☞ Press the locking button on the remote control immediately.

The exterior perimeter monitoring alone is activated: the indicator lamp in the button flashes once per second.

To be effective, this deactivation must be carried out each time the ignition is switched off.

Reactivation of the interior volumetric monitoring

☞ Press the unlocking button on the remote control to deactivate the exterior perimeter monitoring.

☞ Press the locking button on the remote control to activate all the monitoring functions.

The indicator lamp in the button again flashes once per second.

Triggering of the alarm

This is indicated by sounding of the siren and flashing of the direction indicators for thirty seconds.

The monitoring functions remain active until the alarm has been triggered eleven times in succession.

When the vehicle is unlocked using the remote control, rapid flashing of the indicator lamp in the button informs you that the alarm was triggered during your absence. When the ignition is switched on, this flashing stops immediately.

Failure of the remote control

To deactivate the monitoring functions:

☞ Unlock the vehicle using the key in the driver's door lock.

☞ Open the door; the alarm is triggered.

☞ Switch on the ignition; the alarm stops. The indicator lamp in the button goes off.

Locking the vehicle without activating the alarm

☞ Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the key in the driver's door lock.

Malfunction

When the ignition is switched on, fixed illumination of the indicator lamp in the button indicates a malfunction of the system.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Automatic activation*

2 minutes after the last door or the boot is closed, the system is activated automatically.

☞ To avoid triggering the alarm on entering the vehicle, first press the unlocking button on the remote control.

* According to country.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ELECTRIC WINDOWS

System intended to open or close a window manually or automatically. Fitted with a safety anti-pinch system and a system for deactivation in the event of misuse of the rear controls.

1. **Driver's electric window control.**
2. **Passenger's electric window control.**
3. **Rear right electric window control.**
4. **Rear left electric window control.**
5. **Deactivation of the rear electric window and door controls.**

One-touch electric windows

There are two options:

- **manual mode**
  ☞ Press or pull the control gently. The window stops when the control is released.

- **automatic mode**
  ☞ Press or pull the control firmly. The window opens or closes fully when the control is released.
  ☞ Pressing the control again stops the movement of the window.

The electric window controls remain operational for approximately 45 seconds after the ignition is switched off or until the vehicle is locked after a door is opened.

If one of the passenger windows cannot be operated from the driver's door control panel, carry out the operation from the control panel of the passenger door concerned, and vice versa.

Safety anti-pinch

When the window rises and meets an obstacle, it stops and partially lowers again.

If the window cannot be closed (for example, in the presence of ice), immediately after the movement is reversed:

☞ press and hold the control until the window opens fully,

☞ then pull the control immediately and hold it until the window closes,

☞ continue to hold the control for approximately one second after the window has closed.

The safety anti-pinch function is not operational during these operations.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Reinitialisation

If a window does not rise automatically, its operation must be reinitialised:

- ☞ pull the control until the window stops,
- ☞ release the control and pull it again until the window closes fully,
- ☞ continue to hold the control for approximately one second after the window has closed,
- ☞ press the control to lower the window automatically to the low position,
- ☞ when the window has reached the low position, press the control again for approximately one second.

The safety anti-pinch function is not operational during these operations.

Deactivation of the rear electric window and door controls

☞ For the safety of your children, press control **5** to deactivate the rear electric window controls regardless of their position.

This warning lamp comes on temporarily on the instrument panel on deactivation and each time the ignition is switched on.

This control also deactivates the interior controls for the rear doors (refer to the section "Child safety - Electric child lock").

Always remove the key from the ignition when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.

If an obstacle is encountered during operation of the electric windows, you must reverse the movement of the window. To do this, press the control concerned.

When the driver operates the controls for the passengers' electric windows, they must ensure that no one is preventing correct closing of the windows.

The driver must ensure that the passengers use the electric windows correctly.

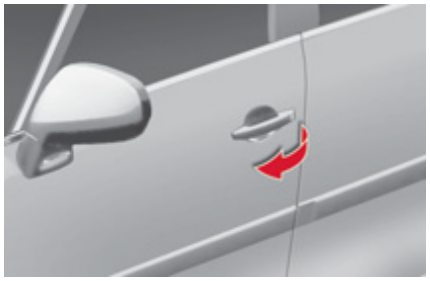
Be aware of children when operating the windows.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

DOORS

Opening

From outside



☞ After unlocking the vehicle completely using the remote control or the key, pull the door handle.

When the selective unlocking is activated, the first press of the remote control unlocking button permits unlocking of the driver's door only.

From inside

☞ Pull the interior control lever of a front door; this unlocks the vehicle completely.

With the selective unlocking activated:

- the driver's door control unlocks the driver's door only,
- the other door controls unlock the other doors and the boot.

The interior door controls do not operate when the vehicle is deadlocked.

Manual central locking control

System for locking or unlocking the vehicle - the doors and boot - from the driving position.

Locking

☞ Press this button to lock the vehicle.

The red indicator lamp on the button comes on.

If one of the doors is open, the central locking does not take place.

If the boot or the rear screen is open, central locking from the inside is active for the doors, to allow long objects to be carried.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Unlocking

☞ Press this button again to unlock the vehicle.

The red indicator lamp on the button goes off.

If the vehicle is locked or dead-locked from the outside, the red indicator lamp flashes and button **A** is inactive.

☞ In this case, use the remote control or the key to unlock the vehicle.

Automatic central locking

This system automatically locks the doors, boot and rear screen while driving.

You can activate or deactivate this function.

Locking

When the speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h), the doors, the boot and the rear screen lock automatically.

If one of the doors or the boot or rear screen is open, the automatic central locking does not take place.

Unlocking

☞ Above 6 mph (10 km/h), press this button to unlock the doors, the boot and the rear screen temporarily.

Ignition on:

Activation

☞ Press this button for more than two seconds.

A confirmation message appears in the multifunction screen.

Deactivation

☞ Press this button again for more than two seconds.

A confirmation message appears in the multifunction screen.

Emergency control

System which locks or unlocks the doors mechanically in the event of a malfunction of the battery or of the central locking.

In the event of a fault with the central locking, you must disconnect the battery to lock the boot and so ensure the complete locking of the vehicle.

Locking the driver's door

☞ Insert the key in the lock, then turn it to the right.

Unlocking the driver's door

☞ Insert the key in the lock, then turn it to the left.

Locking the front and rear passenger doors

☞ Insert the key in the lock, located on the edge of the door, then turn it **one eighth of a turn**.

Unlocking the front and rear passenger doors

☞ Pull the interior door opening control.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

BOOT

Opening

☞ After unlocking the vehicle completely using the remote control or the key, with the rear screen closed, pull on the lever **1** and raise the tailgate.

Closing

☞ Lower the tailgate using one of the two handholds **3**, located on the interior trim.

☞ Past the balancing point, allow the tailgate to lower and close itself (do not assist it or slow it down).

If the tailgate is not closed correctly:

- **when the engine is running**, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by a message in the multifunction screen for a few seconds,
- **when the vehicle is moving** (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)), this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen for a few seconds.

REAR SCREEN

Opening

This opening gives easy access to the boot, even if you are parked close to a wall or another vehicle.

When the rear screen is open, you can access the boot by raising the rear shelf using its tab (C4 Picasso).

☞ After unlocking the vehicle completely using the remote control or the key, with the boot closed, press the control **2** and raise the rear screen using the base **4** of the wiper arm.

> The boot and the rear screen cannot both be open at the same time.

Closing

☞ Lower the rear screen guiding it with the wiper arm until it is closed.

If the rear screen is not closed correctly:

- **when the engine is running**, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by a message in the multifunction screen for a few seconds,
- **when the vehicle is moving** (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)), this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen for a few seconds.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Emergency boot release

System for mechanical unlocking of the boot in the event of a battery or central locking malfunction.

Unlocking

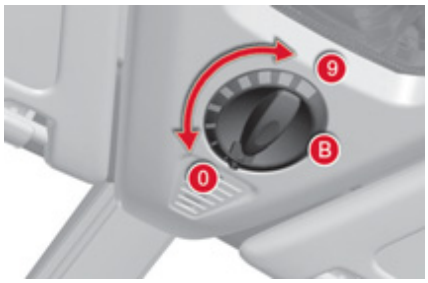
☞ Fold back the rear seats to gain access to the lock from inside the boot.

☞ Insert a small screwdriver into hole **A** of the lock to unlock the tailgate.

☞ Push the white part, located inside the lock, to the left to unlock the boot.

PANORAMIC SUNROOF

It is fitted with an electrically controlled blind.



Opening the roof blind

☞ Rotate the control knob **B** to slide the roof blind to the desired position (positions **1** to **9**).

Closing the roof blind

☞ Rotate the control knob **B** to **position 0** to close the roof blind.

Recommendations

- Pressing the locking button on the remote control for more than two seconds will close the blind (practical when, for example, you leave your vehicle in a sunlit car park).
- On returning to your vehicle, a press on control knob **B** repositions the blind to the last position selected.

Anti-pinch

The blind has an anti-pinch function.

At the end of its travel, when the blind encounters an obstacle on closing, it stops and moves back slightly.

Following a fault or after a battery disconnection during the movement of the blind or after it has stopped, you must re-initialise the anti-pinch function:

☞ place the blind in the closed position,

☞ press control knob **B** for approximately two seconds.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

FUEL TANK

Capacity of the tank: approximately 60 litres.

Low fuel level

When the low fuel level is reached, this warning lamp on the instrument panel comes on, accompanied by an audible warning and a message on the multifunction screen.

When it first comes on, **about 7 litres** of fuel remain in the tank.

Until sufficient fuel has been added, this warning lamp appears every time the ignition is switched on, accompanied by an audible warning and a message. Depending on version, this audible warning and message are repeated with increasing frequency as the fuel level drops towards "**0**".

Refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out.

With Stop & Start, never refuel with the system in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition with the key.

Refuelling

A label on the inside of the fuel filler flap reminds you of the type of fuel to use, depending on your engine type.

Additions of fuel must be of at least 5 litres to be registered by the fuel gauge.

Opening the filler cap may result in an inrush of air. This is entirely normal and results from the sealing of the fuel system.

- ☞ Press control switch **A**, situated on the switch panel on the left of the dashboard, until the fuel flap opens.

  This control switch remains active for a few minutes after switching of the ignition. If necessary, switch the ignition on again to reactivate it.
- ☞ Take care to select the pump that delivers the correct type of fuel for your vehicle.
- ☞ Introduce the nozzle so as to push in the metal non-return flap **B.**
- ☞ Make sure that the nozzle is pushed in as far as possible before starting to refuel (risk of blowback).
- ☞ Maintain this position throughout the refuelling operation.
- ☞ Push the fuel flap to close it.

If you are filling your tank to the top, do not persist after the 3rd cut-off; this could cause malfunctions.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The petrol or Diesel engine of your vehicle is fitted with a catalytic converter, a device which helps to reduce the level of harmful emissions in the exhaust gases.

For petrol engines, you must use unleaded fuel.

The filler neck is narrower, allowing only unleaded petrol nozzles to be introduced.

If you have put in the wrong fuel for your vehicle, you must have the fuel tank drained and filled with the correct fuel before starting the engine.

Fuel cut-off

Your vehicle is equipped with a safety device which cuts off the fuel supply in the event of a collision.

Quality of the fuel used for petrol engines

The petrol engines are perfectly compatible with E10 or E24 type petrol biofuels (containing 10 % or 24 % ethanol), conforming to European standards EN 228 and EN 15376.

E85 type fuels (containing up to 85 % ethanol) are reserved exclusively for vehicles marketed for the use of this type of fuel (BioFlex vehicles). The quality of the ethanol must comply with European standard EN 15293.

For Brazil only, special vehicles are marketed to run on fuels containing up to 100 % ethanol (E100 type).

Quality of the fuel used for Diesel engines

The Diesel engines are perfectly compatible with biofuels which conform to current and future European standards (Diesel fuel which complies with standard EN 590 mixed with a biofuel which complies with standard EN 14214) available at the pumps (containing up to 7 % Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).

The B30 biofuel can be used in certain Diesel engines; however, this use is subject to strict application of the special servicing conditions. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

The use of any other type of (bio)fuel (vegetable or animal oils, pure or diluted, domestic fuel...) is strictly prohibited (risk of damage to the engine and fuel system).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

EXTERIOR LIGHTING CONTROLS

Control stalk for the selection and control of the various front and rear lamps providing the vehicle's lighting.

Main lighting

The various front and rear lamps of the vehicle are designed to adapt the driver's visibility progressively in relation to the climatic conditions:

- sidelamps, to be seen,
- dipped beam headlamps to see without dazzling other drivers,
- main beam headlamps to see clearly when the road is clear.

Additional lighting

Other lamps are fitted to fulfil the requirements of particular driving conditions:

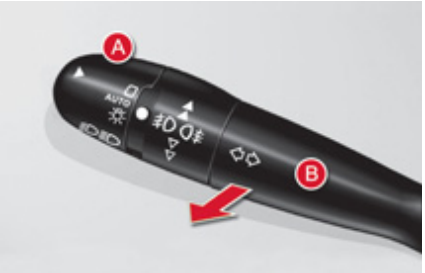
- a rear foglamp to be seen from a distance,
- front foglamps for even better forward vision,
- directional headlamps for improved visibility when cornering,
- daytime running lamps to be seen during the day.

Programming

Various automatic lighting control modes are also available depending on options:

- guide-me-home lighting,
- automatic illumination of headlamps,
- directional lighting.

Manual controls



The lighting is controlled directly by the driver by means of the ring **A** and the stalk **B**.

A. Main lighting mode selection ring: turn it to position the symbol required facing the mark.

Lamps off.

Automatic illumination of headlamps.

Sidelamps.

Dipped headlamps or main beam headlamps.

B. Stalk for switching headlamps: pull the stalk towards you to switch the lighting between dipped and main beam headlamps.

In the lamps off and sidelamps modes, the driver can switch on the main beam headlamps temporarily ("headlamp flash") by maintaining a pull on the stalk.

Displays

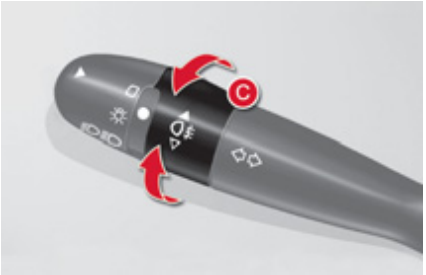
Illumination of the corresponding indicator lamp in the instrument panel confirms that the lighting selected is on.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

C. Foglamps selection ring.

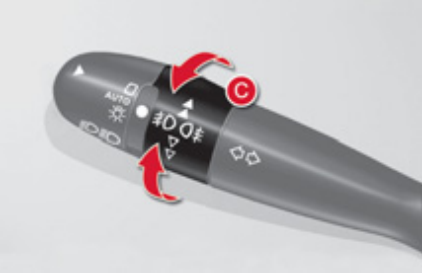
The foglamps operate with the sidelamps and the dipped and main beam headlamps.

Model with rear foglamp only



- 1st turn forwards: rear foglamp on.
- 1st turn rearwards: rear foglamp off.

Model with front and rear foglamps



- 1st turn forwards: front foglamps on.
- 2nd turn forwards: rear foglamps on.
- 1st turn rearwards: rear foglamps off.
- 2nd turn rearwards: front foglamps off.

In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), the presence of misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal; it disappears after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

In good or rainy weather, both day and night, use of the front foglamps and the rear foglamp is prohibited. In these situations, the power of their beams may dazzle other drivers. They should only be used in fog or snow.

In these weather conditions, it is your responsibility to switch on the foglamps and dipped beam headlamps manually as the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light.

Do not forget to switch off the front foglamps and the rear foglamp when they are no longer necessary.

Switching off the lamps when the ignition is switched off

On switching off the ignition, all of the lamps turn off immediately, except for the dipped beam headlamps if guide-me-home lighting is activated.

Switching on the lamps after the ignition is switched off

To reactivate the lighting control, rotate ring **A** to the **"0"** position - lamps off, then to the desired position.

On opening the driver's door a temporary audible signal warns the driver that the lighting is on.

The lamps, with the exception of the sidelamps, switch off automatically after a period that depends on the state of charge of the battery (entering energy economy mode).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

LED lamps

They come on when the engine is started.

Depending on the destination country, they are used for:

- daytime running lamps in day mode and sidelamps in night mode,

or

- sidelamps in day and night mode

Where LED lamps are fitted, the filament bulbs for the sidelamps in the front lamp units are not used.

Activation or deactivation of this lighting is done via the vehicle configuration menu.

Daytime running lamps

Daytime lighting, compulsory in certain countries, which comes on automatically when the engine is started making the vehicle more visible to other users.

This function is assured:

- in countries where it is imposed by regulations,

  by illumination of the dipped beam headlamps with the sidelamps and number plate lamps.
- for other countries where it is provided,

  by the use of dedicated LED lamps.

This function can be activated or deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.

The instruments and controls (multifunction screen, air conditioning control panel, ...) are not illuminated, except in night mode with manual or automatic illumination of headlamps.

Manual guide-me-home lighting

The temporary lighting of dipped headlamps after the vehicle's ignition has been switched off makes the driver's exit easier when the light is poor.

Switching on

☞ With the ignition off, "flash" the headlamps using the lighting stalk **B**.

☞ A second "headlamp flash" switches the function off again.

Switching off

The manual guide-me-home lighting switches off automatically after a set time.

The manual guide-me-home lighting is also available by pressing the lighting button on the remote control (refer to the section "Access - § Remote control key").

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Automatic illumination of headlamps

When a low level of ambient light is detected by a sunshine sensor, the number plate lamps, sidelamps and dipped beam headlamps are switched on automatically, without any action on the part of the driver. They can also come on if rain is detected, at the same time as automatic operation of the windscreen wipers.

As soon as the brightness returns to a sufficient level or after the windscreen wipers are switched off, the lamps are switched off automatically.

Activation

☞ Turn ring **A** to the **"AUTO"** position. The activation of the function is accompanied by a message in the screen.

Deactivation

☞ Turn ring **A** to a position other than **"AUTO"**. Deactivation of the function is accompanied by a message in the screen.

Operating fault

In the event of a malfunction of the sunshine sensor, the lamps comes on, a message appears in the screen, accompanied by an audible signal.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Automatic "guide-me-home" lighting

When the automatic illumination of headlamps function is activated, under low ambient light the dipped beams headlamps come on automatically when the ignition is switched off.

Programming

The activation and the duration of the guide-me-home lighting can be set in the vehicle configuration menu.

For a vehicle fitted with the monochrome screen A, the duration is fixed.

In fog or snow, the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light. Therefore, the lighting will not come on automatically.

Do not cover the sunshine sensor, linked with the rain sensor and located in the centre of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror; the associated functions would no longer be controlled.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

EXTERIOR SIDE SPOTLAMPS

Switching on

The side spotlamps come on temporarily:

- when you unlock the vehicle,
- when you press the lighting button on the remote control,
- with the automatic guide-me-home lighting, on switching off the ignition,
- when you remove the key from the ignition,
- when you open a door,
- when you use the remote control to locate the vehicle.

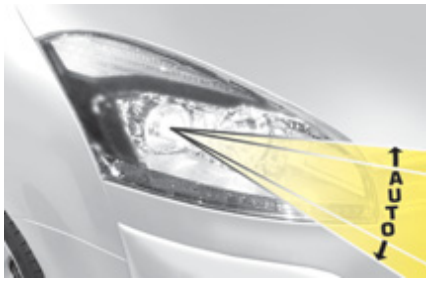
MANUAL ADJUSTMENT OF HEADLAMPS

To avoid dazzling other road users, the height of the halogen bulb headlamps must be adjusted according to the load in the vehicle. To do this, turn the control, located below the dashboard to the left of the driver, to the appropriate position:

0. 1 or 2 people in the front seats.
-. 3 people.
1. 4 to 7 people.
-. Intermediate setting.
2. 4 to 7 people + maximum authorised loads.
-. Intermediate setting.
3. Driver + maximum authorised loads.

Initial setting is position "**0**".

AUTOMATIC ADJUSTMENT OF XENON HEADLAMPS



This system adjusts the height of the xenon headlamp beams automatically and when stationary, according to the load in the vehicle, so as to avoid causing a nuisance to other road user.

SERVICE If a malfunction occurs, this warning lamp is displayed in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen.

The system then places your headlamps in the lowest position.

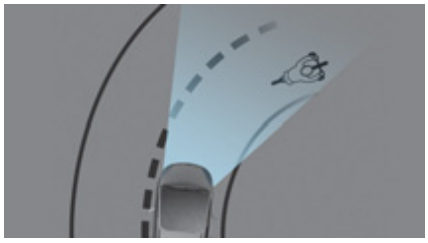
Do not touch the xenon bulbs.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

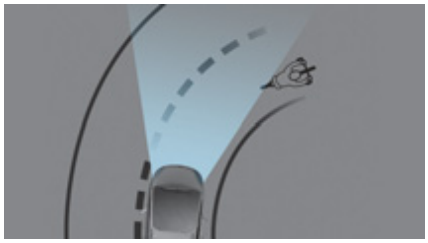
DIRECTIONAL LIGHTING

When the dipped or main beam headlamps are on, this function enables the light beam to follow the direction of the road.

The use of this function, coupled with the xenon headlamps only, considerably improves the quality of your lighting when cornering.



with directional lighting



without directional lighting

Programming

The function is activated or deactivated via the multifunction screen configuration menu.

Operating fault

If a malfunction occurs, this warning lamp flashes on the instrument panel, accompanied by a message on the multifunction screen.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

When stationary or moving at very low speed or when reverse gear is engaged, the system is inactive.

The status of the system remains in the memory when the ignition is switched off.

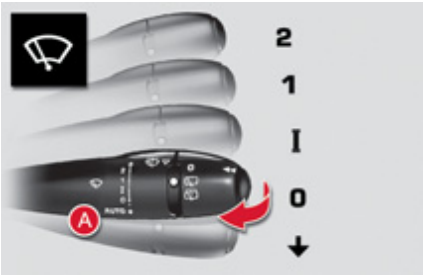
On vehicles fitted with daytime running lamps, the function is activated if the lighting stalk is in the **"AUTO"** or **"Dipped/main beam headlamps"** position. In position **"0"**, the function is not activated.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WIPER CONTROLS

System for selection and control of the various front and rear wiping modes for the elimination of rain and cleaning.

The vehicle's front and rear wipers are designed to improve the driver's visibility progressively according to the climatic conditions.



Programming

Various automatic wiper control modes are also available according to the following options:

- automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers,
- rear wiping on engaging reverse gear.

Manual controls

The wiper commands are issued directly by the driver by means of the stalk **A** and the ring **B**.

Windscreen wipers

A. Wiping speed selection stalk:

2	fast (heavy rain),
1	normal (moderate rain),
I	intermittent (proportional to the speed of the vehicle),
0	park,
↓	single wipe (press down and release),
	or
AUTO ↓	automatic, then single wipe (see following page).

Rear wiper

B. Rear wiper selection ring:

park,

intermittent wipe,

wash-wipe (set duration).

If a significant accumulation of snow or ice is present, or when using a tailgate bicycle carrier, deactivate the automatic rear wiper via the multifunction screen configuration menu.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Reverse gear

When reverse gear is engaged, the rear wiper will come into operation if the windscreen wipers are operating.

Programming

The function is activated or deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.

This function is activated by default.

Windscreen and headlamp wash

☞ Pull the windscreen wiper stalk towards you. The windscreen wash then the windscreen wipers operate for a fixed period.

The headlamp washers only operate when **the dipped beam headlamps are on**.

Automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers

The windscreen wipers operate automatically, without any action on the part of the driver, if rain is detected (sensor behind the rear view mirror), adapting their speed to the intensity of the rainfall.

Activation

This is controlled manually by the driver by pushing the stalk downwards to the **"AUTO"** position.

It is accompanied by a message in the screen.

Switching off

This is controlled manually by the driver by moving the stalk upwards then returning it to position **"0"**.

It is accompanied by a message in the screen.

The automatic rain sensitive wipers must be reactivated if the ignition has been off for more than one minute, by pushing the stalk downwards.

Operating fault

If an automatic wiping malfunction occurs, the wipers will operate in intermittent mode.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Do not cover the rain sensor, linked with the sunshine sensor and located in the centre of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror.

Switch off the automatic rain sensitive wipers when using an automatic car wash.

In winter, to avoid damaging the wiper blades, it is advisable to wait until the windscreen is completely clear of ice before activating the automatic rain sensitive wipers.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Special position of the windscreen wipers

This position permits release of the windscreen wiper blades.

It is used for cleaning or replacement of the blades. It can also be useful, in winter, to detach the blades from the windscreen.

☞ Any action on the wiper stalk in the minute after switching off the ignition places the blades vertically on the screen.

☞ To park the blades again, switch on the ignition and operate the wiper stalk.

To maintain the effectiveness of the "flat-blade" type of wiper blades, it is advisable to:

- handle them with care,
- clean them regularly using soapy water,
- avoid using them to retain cardboard on the windscreen,
- replace them at the first signs of wear.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

COURTESY LAMPS

1. **Front courtesy lamp**
2. **Map reading lamps**

Front courtesy lamp

In this position, the courtesy lamp comes on gradually:

- when the vehicle is unlocked,
- when a door or the boot is opened,
- when the key is removed from the ignition,
- when the remote control locking button is activated, in order to locate your vehicle.

It switches off gradually:

- when the vehicle is locked,
- when the ignition is switched on,
- 30 seconds after the last door is closed.

Permanently off.

Permanent lighting.

In permanent lighting mode, different lighting times are available:

- with the ignition off, approximately ten minutes,
- in energy economy mode, approximately thirty seconds,
- with the engine running, unlimited.

Map reading lamps

☞ With the ignition on, press the corresponding switch.

Panoramic sunroof courtesy lamps

These courtesy lamps have two operating modes:

- automatic lighting when a door is opened or when the front courtesy lamp is in the "permanent lighting" position,
- permanent lighting.

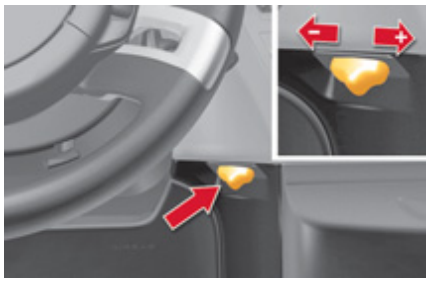
Opening the boot switches on the third row courtesy lamp and the boot lamps.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

LIGHTING PACK

Interior mood lighting

This lighting, available once the sidelamps are on, in night mode, provides subdued lighting in the passenger compartment.



This function activates the light sources which are located in the dashboard, near the interior door levers and in the roof.

Operation

This back-lit control, located near the steering wheel below the dashboard, is used to switch on and off and adjust the brightness of this lighting.

To **increase** brightness:

☞ Press the right of the control to obtain the desired level.

To **reduce** brightness:

☞ Press the left of the control to obtain the desired level.

The setting is stored when the ignition is switched off.

Interior welcome lighting

When unlocking the vehicle with the remote control or the key, the footwell lamps, interior lamps and interior mood lighting sources come on for 30 seconds.

This function cannot be deactivated.

Front door pockets with automatic lighting

The lighting for the door pockets comes on automatically when you place a hand inside one of the compartments.

It goes off after a few seconds when you take your hand away.

Reading lamps on front seat backrests

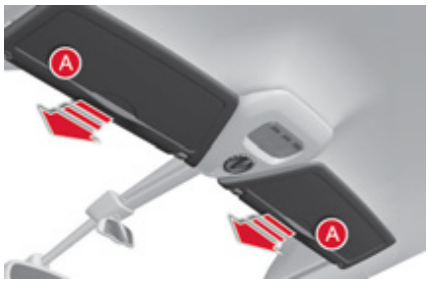
There are reading lamps in the backrests of the front seats, behind the rear tables. They can operate only when the table is lowered.

☞ Press the "On/Off" button to switch the reading lamp on or off.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SLIDING SUN VISOR

Sliding blinds



Sliding blinds are provided for your protection against bright sunlight. They can be adjusted manually.

☞ Slide the blind to the desired position by pushing at **A**.

Visor rails

The blinds are extended on the sun visor rails.

Fold the visor downwards, to protect against dazzle to the face.

If dazzle is coming from the side windows, detach the visor from its housing above the centre of the windscreen and pivot it to the side.

The visors are fitted with a locking system on their central housing when the blind is reeled in. To remove the visor from its central housing or to reposition it, it must be in a vertical position.

Do not attach or suspend heavy objects on the slide rail of the sun blind.

TOLL CARD/CAR PARK TICKET WINDOWS

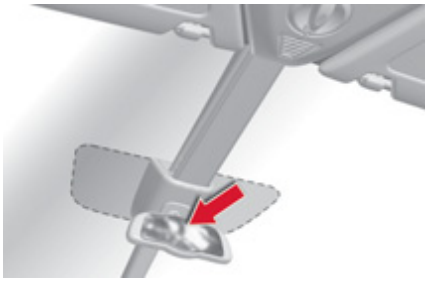
Facility for affixing toll cards and/or car park tickets.

These windows are located on each side of the base of the child surveillance mirror.

They are two non-reflective areas of the athermic windscreen.

The athermic windscreen limits heating of the passenger compartment by reducing the effects of the sun's rays (ultra-violet). It consists of a reflective layer, which also blocks certain radio-electric signals (automatic toll card payments, etc.).

Child surveillance mirror



A child surveillance mirror is fitted above the rear view mirror. This allows you to monitor the vehicle's rear passengers, or it can facilitate conversation between the front and rear passengers without the need to move the rear view mirror.

It can be folded away to eliminate dazzle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

UPPER STORAGE COMPARTMENTS

There are large storage compartments at the top of the dashboard, one on the driver's side and one on the passenger's side.

☞ To open, press the button at the bottom corner.

☞ To close, lower the lid fully until it clicks.

For safety reasons, the upper storage compartments should be kept closed when the vehicle is moving.

ILLUMINATED GLOVE BOX

It includes storage areas for a bottle of water, the vehicle handbook pack, ...

Its lid has areas for storing a pen, a pair of spectacles, tokens, cards, a cup, fragrance cartridges...

☞ To open the glove box, raise the handle and lower the lid.

The lamp comes on automatically when the lid is opened.

COOLED GLOVE BOX

It is cooled by a ventilation nozzle that can be closed manually.

It is directly linked to the vehicle's air conditioning system, being supplied with cooled air whatever the requirements of the passenger compartment.

The cooling of your glove box only operates when the engine is running and the air conditioning is on.

For safety reasons, the glove box should remain closed when the vehicle is moving.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

COOL STORAGE

Vehicles with the **electronic gearbox system** or an **automatic gearbox** possess an additional storage space in the middle of the dashboard.

☞ To open, pull the handle and lower the lid.

The cooled storage has automatic lighting.

It can accommodate a 1.5 litre bottle and two 0.5 litre bottles, for example.

Two cup-holders are available when the lid is open.

The cooled storage has a ventilation nozzle. It is directly linked to the vehicle's air conditioning system, and is supplied with cooled air whatever the settings for the passenger compartment.

The cooling of this storage area only operates when the engine is running and the air conditioning is on.

For safety reasons, the cooled storage compartment should be kept closed when the vehicle is moving.

CENTRE CONSOLE

The centre console contains, depending on version:

- two cup-holders,
- two storage compartments,
- a 12 V accessory socket (Maximum power: 120W); this is operational when the ignition is on.

  There may be an additional 12 V accessory socket in the boot,
- a USB port.

SMOKER'S KIT

This kit consists of a cigar lighter and a portable ashtray.

These are located on the centre console. The portable ashtray can be placed in a cup holder.

☞ To use the cigar lighter, press it in and wait a few seconds until it pops out automatically.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

MATS

Removable carpet protection component.

Fitting

When fitting the mat for the first time, on the driver's side, use only the fixings provided in the wallet attached.

The other mats are simply placed on the carpet.

Removal

To remove the mat on the driver's side:

☞ move the seat as far back as possible,
☞ unclip the fixings,
☞ remove the mat.

Refitting

To refit the mat on the driver's side:

☞ position the mat correctly,
☞ refit the fixings by pressing,
☞ check that the mat is secured correctly.

To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:

- only use mats which are suited to the fixings already present in the vehicle; their use is essential,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

USB BOX

This connection box, consisting of an auxiliary JACK socket and a USB port, is located on the centre console.

It permits the connection of portable equipment, such as a digital audio player of the iPod® or USB memory stick type.

It reads the audio file formats which are transmitted to your audio equipment and played via the vehicle's speakers.

You can manage these files using the steering mounted controls or the audio equipment control panel and display them on the multifunction screen.

When it is in use, the portable equipment charges automatically.

For more information on the use of this equipment, refer to the "Audio and Telematics" section.

DOOR POCKETS

Front door

The front door pockets can hold objects equivalent in volume to a 1.5 litre bottle.

They may have their own lighting, which comes on automatically when your hand approaches.

This lighting goes out automatically after a few moments when your hand is taken away.

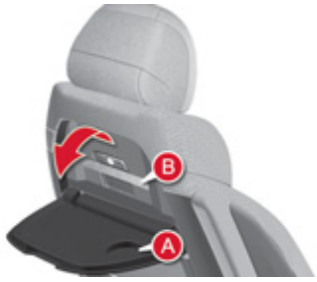
Rear door

The rear door pockets can hold objects equivalent in volume to a 0.5 litre bottle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

AIRCRAFT-STYLE REAR TABLES

Rear table stowed



Rear table opened

The backrests of the front seats are fitted with aircraft-style tables. These incorporate a cup-holder **A** and a retaining strap **B**, for the placing of objects.

☞ Pull the table downwards to open.

☞ To stow the table, raise it until the latch locks.

For safety reasons, these tables collapse downwards if excessive pressure is exerted on them.

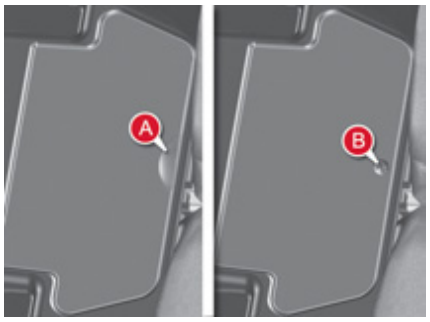
Individual reading lamps

Reading lamps **C** may be fitted in the front seat backrests, behind the tables. They illuminate the surface of the tables without disturbing the other passengers.

They can be used only while the table is down.

☞ Press the "on/off" button to turn the lamp on or off.

STORAGE UNDER THE SECOND ROW FOOTWELL



Depending on the configuration, the vehicle has one or two storage compartments under the footwell, located between the seats of the first and second rows. They can be accessed via clipped flaps with a handle **A**.

The compartment on the left-hand side may contain the temporary puncture repair kit and the tool kit may be stored in the compartment on the right-hand side. In this case the flap is secured by means of a screw **B**. To gain access to the compartment, turn the screw a quarter turn anticlockwise using a coin.

On vehicles fitted with pneumatic suspension, the left-hand flap is locked.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

THIRD ROW STORAGE

Third-row passengers may have storage pockets in the side panel and each of them will have a cup-holder (7 seater model).

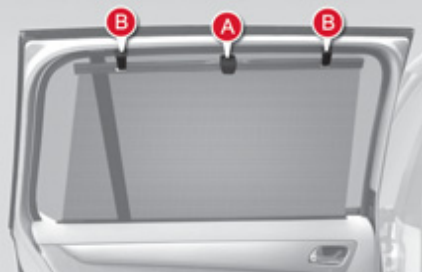
SIDE BLINDS (C4 PICASSO)

Fitted on the 2nd row rear windows, these protect young children from the sun's rays.

☞ Pull on the tab **A** and anchor the blind on the hook **B**.

SIDE BLINDS (GRAND C4 PICASSO)

Fitted on the 2nd and 3rd row rear windows, these protect young children from the sun's rays.



Second row

☞ Pull on the tab **A** and anchor the blind on the hooks **B**.

Third-row

The blinds are fitted in the third-row trim panels.

☞ Pull on the tab and anchor the blind on the hooks.

REAR BLIND (GRAND C4 PICASSO)

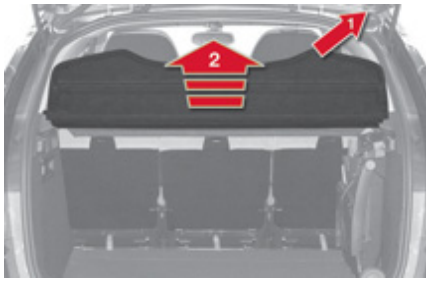
☞ Pull on the tab and anchor the blind on the hooks.

Do not attach or suspend heavy objects in the environs of the sun visors (blind housings and hooks...).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

LUGGAGE COVER (C4 PICASSO)

This is in two parts.



Rear parcel shelf

Removal

- ☞ Unhook the cords.
- ☞ Push upwards, then lift on each side of the luggage cover.

Fitting

- ☞ Offer up the shelf to its housings and push firmly down until it engages.
- ☞ For the shelf to rise with the tailgate, take the cords and attach them on the tailgate.

Front parcel shelf

Removal

- ☞ First remove the rear shelf.
- ☞ Push upwards, then lift on each side.

Refitting

- ☞ Direct the flap downwards.
- ☞ Offer up the shelf to its housings and push firmly down until it engages.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

MODUBOX (C4 PICASSO)

Equipment for use both inside the vehicle and away from the vehicle. It comprises a shopping trolley and a flexible bag (insulated on some versions) which can be used independently of each other depending on your needs (by detaching the fastenings on each side at the top and bottom).

To use

- ☞ Unhook the red strap to free the Modubox.
- ☞ Unhook the black strap then press on the round buttons on either side of the Modubox simultaneously to unfold it.

Use outside the vehicle

- ☞ Press on the recess on the left hand side of the Modubox to raise (or lower) the handle.

Stowing inside the vehicle

- ☞ Perform the operations in reverse to fold and stow inside the vehicle.
- ☞ If you have used your Modubox away from the vehicle, take care to reposition it correctly in the housings provided for this purpose.

BAG HOOK

Located on the left-hand interior wall of the boot, this can be used to secure shopping bags.

LUGGAGE COVER ROLLER (GRAND C4 PICASSO)

Position 1

5-seat configuration; installed behind the second-row seats, with the third-row seats folded away.

Installing the roller

- ☞ Position the left-hand end of the roller in notch **A**.
- ☞ Compress the right-hand end of the roller and place it in notch **B**.
- ☞ Pull out the blind until it reaches the boot pillars.
- ☞ Insert the guides of the blind into the rails on the pillars.

Removing the roller

- ☞ Carry out these operations in reverse order.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The roller has a moving flap to avoid interference with the second-row passengers when the seats are in the "reclined" position.

Position 2

7-seat configuration; installed behind the third-row seats when these are folded away. This position conceals objects stowed in the boot from outside view.

Installing the roller

- ☞ Reel in the blind, then remove the roller from its initial position.
- ☞ Position the roller, with the blind pull bar uppermost, flap downward.
- ☞ Fold the concertina boards.
- ☞ Engage the lug on the left of the roller in notch **C**.
- ☞ Pass the right-hand end above the third-row armrest.
- ☞ Engage the lug in notch **D**.
- ☞ Pull the seat belt(s) so that they reel out without locking.
- ☞ Pull out the blind and engage the guides into the rails on the pillars.
- ☞ Lock the seat(s) in position.

Removing the roller

- ☞ Push the flap towards the seat backrest.
- ☞ Lift the concertina board by taking it at the side, then position it vertically.
- ☞ Release the seat by pulling the strap **E**.
- ☞ Push the backrest towards the front.
- ☞ Proceed in reverse order to installing.

The roller can only be stored when the seats are folded away.

You can position the concertina board vertically to lodge a bulky object in the boot well.

Position 3

7-seat configuration; stowed behind the third row seats when these are folded away.

Installing the roller

- ☞ Fold the concertina boards.
- ☞ Position the roller, with the blind pull bar uppermost, flap downward.
- ☞ Engage the lug on the left of the roller in notch **C**.
- ☞ Pass the right-hand end above the third-row armrest.
- ☞ Engage the lug in notch **D**.

Removing the roller

- ☞ Proceed in reverse order to installing.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CARGO NET (GRAND C4 PICASSO)

This enables you to maximise the vehicle's loadspace.

It retains objects, preventing them from sliding towards the front of the passenger compartment.

You insert it under the luggage-cover roller securing it on the third-row side mouldings.

Position 1

5-seat configuration: installed behind the second row.

Installing the roller

- ☞ Remove the protective covers located under the blind roller notches.
- ☞ Position the roller under that of the luggage-cover blind.
- ☞ Raise the flap on the blind, positioning it on top of the blind.
- ☞ Deploy the net, passing it between the rollers and the seats.
- ☞ Pull the net upwards.
- ☞ Anchor it to the roof by means of the fixing points (after you have removed their covers).

Removing the roller

- ☞ Carry out these operations in reverse order.

Position 2

2-seat configuration; installed behind the first row.

Installing the roller

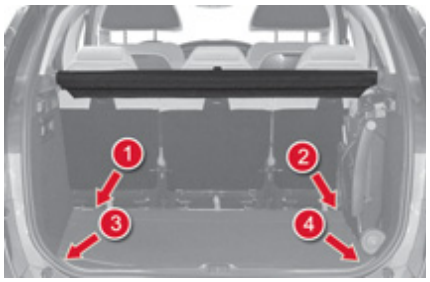
- ☞ With the second-row seats folded away, remove the covers of the Isofix mounting points located on the seat backrests.
- ☞ Secure the roller on the Isofix mounting points.
- ☞ Deploy the net and pull it upwards.
- ☞ Anchor it to the roof by means of the fixing points (after you have removed their covers).

Removing the roller

- ☞ Carry out these operations in reverse order.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

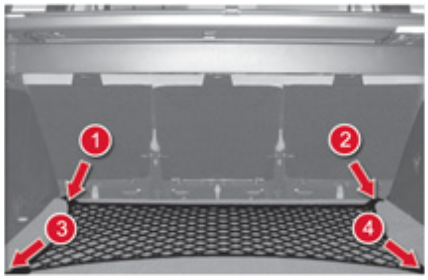
LUGGAGE ANCHORING RINGS (C4 PICASSO)



There are 4 anchoring rings in the boot to enable you to secure your luggage:

- **1, 2, 3** and **4** on the boot floor.

LUGGAGE ANCHORING RINGS (GRAND C4 PICASSO)



There are 4 anchoring rings in the boot to enable you to secure your luggage:

- **1, 2, 3** and **4** on the boot floor.

LUGGAGE RETAINING NET (GRAND C4 PICASSO)

Attached to the luggage anchoring rings, it allows objects to be held on the boot floor.

For reasons of safety in the event of sudden braking, it is recommended that you place heavy objects on the floor as:m! close as possible to the backrests of the second-row seats.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

TORCH

This is a portable lamp, fitted in the boot wall, which can be used to illuminate the boot or as a torch.

Grand C4 Picasso

C4 Picasso

Boot lamp

The boot lamp **A** comes on automatically when the boot is opened and switches off automatically when the boot is closed.

Various lighting durations are available:

- ignition off, approximately ten minutes,
- in energy economy mode, approximately thirty seconds,
- engine running, no limit.

Operation of the torch

This torch operates with NiMH rechargeable batteries.

It has a battery life of approximately 45 minutes and recharges while you are driving.

> Observe the polarities when fitting the batteries.
>
> Never replace the rechargeable batteries with normal single-use batteries.
>
> For replacement of the batteries, see the "Practical information - Changing a bulb" section.

Using the torch

☞ Extract the torch from its location pulling it upwards, as indicated by the arrow.

☞ Press the switch **B**, located on the back, to switch the torch on or off.

☞ Unfold the support **C**, located on the back, to set down and raise the torch; for example, when changing a wheel.

Stowing the torch

☞ Put the torch back in place in its location, starting at the bottom.

If you have forgotten to switch off the torch, this switches it off automatically.

> It the torch is not engaged correctly, it may not charge and may not come on when the boot is opened.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

GENERAL POINTS RELATING TO CHILD SEATS

Although one of CITROËN's main criteria when designing your vehicle, the safety of your children also depends on you.

For maximum safety, please observe the following recommendations:

- in accordance with European regulations, **all children under the age of 12 or less than one and a half metres tall must travel in approved child seats suited to their weight**, on seats fitted with a seat belt or ISOFIX mountings*,
- **statistically, the safest seats in your vehicle for carrying children are the rear seats,**
- **a child weighing less than 9 kg must travel in the "rearwards-facing" position both in the front and in the rear.**

CITROËN recommends that children should travel in the **rear seats** of your vehicle:

- **"rearwards-facing"** up to the age of 2,
- **"forwards-facing"** over the age of 2.

CHILD SEAT IN THE FRONT

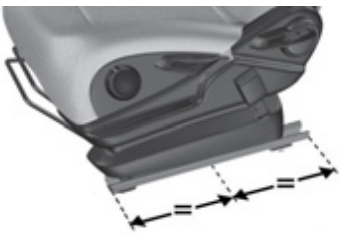
"Rearwards-facing"

When a "rearwards-facing" child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, it is essential that the passenger airbag is deactivated. Otherwise, **the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were to inflate**.

"Forwards-facing"

When a "forwards-facing" child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, adjust the vehicle's seat to the intermediate longitudinal position with the seat back upright and leave the passenger airbag activated.

Intermediate longitudinal position



* The rules for carrying children are specific to each country. Refer to the current legislation in your country.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Passenger airbag OFF

Refer to the advice given on the label present on both sides of the passenger's sun visor.

To assure the safety of your child, you must deactivate the passenger's front airbag when you install a child seat in the rearwards facing position on the front passenger's seat.
Otherwise, there is a risk that the child could be seriously injured or killed if the airbag were deployed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CHILD SEATS RECOMMENDED BY CITROËN

CITROËN offers a complete range of recommended child seats which are secured using a **three point seat belt**:

Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg		Groups 1, 2 and 3: from 9 to 36 kg	
	L1 "RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus" Installed in the rearwards-facing position.		**L2** "KIDDY Comfort Pro" The impact shield must be used for carrying young children (from 9 to 18 kg).
Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg			
	L3 "RECARO Start"		**L4** "KLIPPAN Optima" From the age of 6 years (approximately 22 kg), the booster is used on its own.
	L5 "RÖMER KIDFIX" Can be fitted to the vehicle's ISOFIX mountings. The child is restrained by the seat belt.		

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

LOCATIONS FOR CHILD SEATS SECURED WITH THE VEHICLE SEAT BELT

In conformity with European law, this table tells you to what extent each of the seat positions in your vehicle may take a child seat that is secured with the vehicle seat belt and approved as Universal (a), according to the weight of the child and the position in the vehicle.

	Seat position	Weight groups established by legislation			
		< 10 kg and < 13 kg (groups 0 (b) and 0+)	**9 – 18 kg** (group 1)	**15 – 25 kg** (group 2)	**22 – 36 kg** (group 3)
1st row	**Front passenger** (c)	**U**	**U**	**U**	**U**
2nd row	**Outer**	**U**	**U**	**U**	**U**
	Centre	**U**	**U**	**U**	**U**
3rd row*	**Outer**	**U**	**U**	**U**	**U**

(a) Universal child seat: child seat which can be installed in all vehicles by means of the seat belt.
(b) Group 0: from birth to 10 kg. Shell seats and "car cots" cannot be installed on the front passenger seat.
(c) Consult the legislation in force in your country before installing your child on this seat.
U: seat position suitable for the installation (in conjunction with the vehicle seat belt) of a universal rearwards-facing and/or forwards-facing child seat.

For seats in groups 1, 2 and 3, check that the child seat is correctly secured on the backrest of the vehicle seat. If necessary, remove and stow the head restraint.
To install a voluminous child seat in the 2nd or 3rd row, move the rear seat fully back so as to avoid interference with the front seat.

* Applies only to the CITROËN Grand C4 Picasso.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ADVICE ON CHILD SEATS

The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's protection in the event of an accident.

When installing a child seat using the seat belt, check that the seat belt is tightened correctly on the child seat and that it secures the child seat firmly on the seat of your vehicle.

Remember to fasten the seat belts or the child seat harnesses **keeping the slack** in relation to the child's body to a minimum, even for short journeys.

For optimum installation of the "forwards-facing" child seat, ensure that the back of the child seat is in contact with the back of the vehicle's seat and that the head restraint does not cause any discomfort.

If the head restraint has to be removed, ensure that it is stored or attached securely to prevent it from being thrown around the vehicle in the event of sharp braking.

Children under the age of 10 must not travel in the "forwards-facing" position on the front passenger seat, unless the rear seats are already occupied by other children, cannot be used or are absent.

Deactivate the passenger airbag* when a "rearwards-facing" child seat is installed on the front seat. Otherwise, the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were to inflate.

Installing a booster seat

The chest part of the seat belt must be positioned on the child's shoulder without touching the neck.

Ensure that the lap part of the seat belt passes correctly over the child's thighs.

CITROËN recommends the use of a booster seat which has a back, fitted with a seat belt guide at shoulder level.

As a safety precaution, do not leave:

- one or more children alone and unsupervised in a vehicle,
- a child or an animal in a vehicle which is exposed to the sun, with the windows closed,
- the keys within reach of children inside the vehicle.

To prevent accidental opening of the doors, use the "Child lock".

Take care not to open the rear windows by more than one third.

To protect young children from the rays of the sun, fit side blinds on the rear windows.

* According to country and current local legislation.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

"ISOFIX" MOUNTINGS

Your vehicle has been approved in accordance with the **latest** ISOFIX **regulations**.

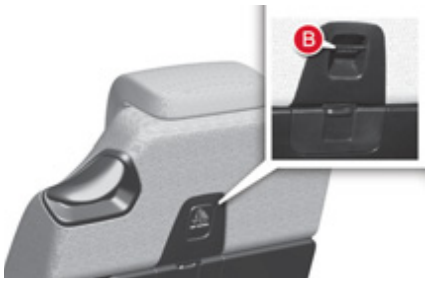
The three second row seats are fitted with regulation ISOFIX mountings.

The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's protection in the event of an accident.

For information on installing ISOFIX child seats in your vehicle, refer to the table showing the locations that can be used for ISOFIX child seats.

There are three rings for each seat:

- two rings **A**, located between the vehicle seat back and cushion, indicated by a label,



- a ring **B**, used to fix the upper strap, referred to as the **TOP TETHER**, indicated by a label on a cover at the top of the seat back.

This ISOFIX mounting system provides fast, reliable and safe fitting of the child seat in your vehicle.

ISOFIX child seats are fitted with two latches which are secured easily on the two rings **A**.

Some also have an **upper strap** which is attached to the ring **B**.

To attach this strap, remove the vehicle seat's head restraint and the cover at the top of the seat back. Then fix the hook on the ring **B** and tighten the upper strap.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ISOFIX CHILD SEAT RECOMMENDED BY CITROËN AND APPROVED FOR YOUR VEHICLE

RÖMER Duo Plus ISOFIX (size category **B1**)	
Group 1: from 9 to 18 kg	
	Installed only in the forwards-facing position. Fitted with an upper strap to be secured on the upper ring **B**, referred to as the TOP TETHER. Three seat body angles: sitting, reclining, lying. ☞ Adjust the front seat of the vehicle so that the child's feet do not touch the back of the seat.

This child seat can also be used on seats which are not fitted with ISOFIX mountings. In this case, it must be attached to the vehicle seat using the three point seat belt.
Follow the instructions for fitting the child seat given in the seat manufacturer's installation guide.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

LOCATIONS FOR INSTALLING ISOFIX CHILD SEATS

In compliance with European legislation (ECE 16), this table indicates which of the ISOFIX child seats can be installed in seat positions in your vehicle that are equipped with ISOFIX mounting points.

For ISOFIX universal and semi-universal child seats, the ISOFIX size class, defined by a letter from **A** to **G**, is shown on the child seat to the right of the ISOFIX logo.

	Child weight/age given as a guide									
	Less than 10 kg (group 0) Up to approx. 6 months		**Less than 10 kg (group 0) Less than 13 kg (group 0+)** Up to approx. 1 year old			**9 to 18 kg (group 1)** From 1 to 3 years approx.				
Type of ISOFIX child seat	**Shell seat***		**"Rearwards-facing"**			**"Rearwards-facing"**		**"Forwards-facing"**		
ISOFIX size classes	**F**	**G**	**C**	**D**	**E**	**C**	**D**	**A**	**B**	**B1****
ISOFIX outer rear seats	**IL-SU**		**IL-SU**			**IL-SU**		**IUF**		
ISOFIX centre rear seat	**X**		**IL-SU**			**IL-SU**		**IUF**		

IUF: seat position suitable for installation of an **I**SOFIX **U**niversal "**F**orwards-facing" seat attached using the top belt.

IL-SU: seat position suitable for installation of an **I**SOFIX **S**emi-**U**niversal seat: ISOFIX "rearwards-facing" child seats equipped with a top belt and ISOFIX "shell" child seats with a top belt.

Do not install ISOFIX child seats equipped with a bar.

* The ISOFIX shell is secured to the bottom rings on an ISOFIX position, occupying 2 rear seat positions.

** To install ISOFIX child seats type **B1**, remove the head restraints from the seats.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

MANUAL CHILD LOCK

Mechanical system to prevent opening of the rear door using its interior control.

The control is located on the edge of each rear door.

Locking

☞ Using the ignition key, turn the red control one eighth of a turn, following the instructions on the label.

Unlocking

☞ Using the ignition key, turn the red control one eighth of a turn to return to the original position.

ELECTRIC CHILD LOCK

Remote control system to prevent opening of the rear doors using their interior controls and use of the rear electric windows.

The control is located on the driver's door, with the electric window controls.

Activation

☞ Press button **A**.

This warning lamp comes on temporarily on the instrument panel when the child lock is activated.

It also comes on when the ignition is switched on, then goes off approximately ten seconds after the engine is started.

Deactivation

☞ Press button **A** again.

This system is independent of and in no circumstances takes the place of the central locking system.

Check the status of the child lock each time you switch on the ignition.

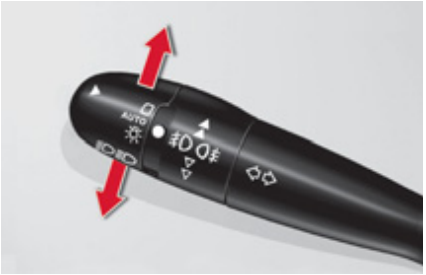
Always remove the key from the ignition when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.

In the event of a serious impact, the electric child lock is deactivated automatically to permit the exit of the rear passengers.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

DIRECTION INDICATORS

Selection of the left or right direction indicators to signal a change of direction of the vehicle.



☞ Left: lower the lighting stalk beyond the point of resistance.

☞ Right: raise the lighting stalk beyond the point of resistance.

"Motorway" function

☞ Press briefly upwards or downwards, without going beyond the point of resistance; the direction indicators will flash 3 times.

HAZARD WARNING LAMPS

A visual warning by means of the direction indicators to alert other road users to a vehicle breakdown, towing or accident.

☞ Press this button, the direction indicators flash.

They can operate with the ignition off.

Automatic operation of hazard warning lamps

When braking in an emergency, depending on the deceleration, the hazard warning lamps come on automatically.

They switch off automatically the first time you accelerate.

☞ You can also switch them off by pressing the button.

Horn

Audible warning system to alert other road users to an imminent danger.

☞ Press at the lower part of the fixed centred controls steering wheel.

Use the horn moderately and only in the following circumstances:

- immediate danger,
- approaching a location lacking visibility.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

TYRE UNDER-INFLATION DETECTION

Sensors fitted in each valve check the tyre pressure during driving and trigger a warning in the event of malfunction (speed above 12 mph (20 km/h)).

The tyre under-inflation detection system is an aid to driving which does not replace the vigilance or responsibility of the driver.

Under-inflated tyre

The service warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen locating the wheel concerned.

Check the tyre pressures as soon as possible. This check must be carried out when the tyres are cold.

Puncture

The **STOP** warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen locating the wheel concerned.

Stop immediately, avoiding any sudden movement of the steering wheel and the brakes.

Change the damaged wheel (punctured or very deflated tyre), and have the tyre pressure checked as soon as possible.

Sensor(s) not detected or faulty

The service warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen locating the wheel or wheels which are not detected or indicating a fault in the system.

Have the faulty sensor(s) checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

This message is also displayed when one of the wheels is away from the vehicle (being repaired) or when one or more wheels without a sensor are fitted.

The spare wheel is not fitted with a sensor.

All repairs and changing of tyres on a wheel fitted with this system must be carried out by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

If, when changing a tyre, you install a wheel which is not detected by your vehicle (example: fitting of snow tyres), you must have the system reinitialised by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

This system does not avoid the need to have the tyre pressures checked regularly (refer to the "Technical data - Identification markings" section) to ensure that the optimum dynamic performance of the vehicle is maintained and prevent premature wear of the tyres, particularly in arduous driving conditions (heavy load, high speed).

The tyre pressures must be checked cold, at least once a month. Remember to check the pressure of the spare wheel.

The tyre under-inflation detection system may experience temporary interference due to electro-magnetic signals on a frequency close to that used by the system.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

BRAKING ASSISTANCE SYSTEMS

Group of supplementary systems which help you to obtain optimum braking in complete safety in emergency situations:

- anti-lock braking system (ABS),
- electronic brake force distribution (EBFD),
- emergency braking assistance (EBA).

Anti-lock braking system and electronic brake force distribution

Linked systems which improve the stability and manoeuvrability of your vehicle when braking, in particular on poor or slippery surfaces.

Activation

The anti-lock braking system comes into operation automatically when there is a risk of wheel lock.

Normal operation of the ABS may make itself felt by slight vibration of the brake pedal.

When braking in an emergency, press very firmly without releasing the pressure.

Operating fault

If this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen, it indicates a malfunction of the anti-lock braking system which could result in loss of control of the vehicle when braking.

If this warning lamp comes on, together with the **STOP** and **ABS** warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen, it indicates a malfunction of the electronic brake force distribution which could result in loss of control of the vehicle when braking.

You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so.

In either case, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

When replacing wheels (tyres and rims), ensure that they conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Emergency braking assistance

System which, in an emergency, enables you to obtain the optimum braking pressure more quickly, thus reducing the stopping distance.

Activation

It is triggered by the speed at which the brake pedal is pressed.

The effect of this is a reduction in the resistance of the pedal and an increase in braking efficiency.

When braking in an emergency, press firmly without releasing the pressure.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

TRAJECTORY CONTROL SYSTEMS

Anti-slip regulation (ASR) and electronic stability programme (ESP)

The anti-slip regulation (also known as Traction Control) optimises traction to prevent skidding of the wheels, by acting on the brakes of the driving wheels and on the engine.

The electronic stability programme acts on the brake of one or more wheels and on the engine to keep the vehicle on the trajectory required by the driver, within the limits of the laws of physics.

Activation

These systems are activated automatically each time the vehicle is started.

They come into operation in the event of a grip or trajectory problem.

This is indicated by flashing of this warning lamp in the instrument panel.

Intelligent Traction Control system*

Your vehicle has a system to help driving on snow.

This automatic system continuously checks for situations of difficult surface adhesion that could make it difficult to move off or make progress on deep fresh snow or compacted snow.

In these situations, the system takes over from the **ASR** system by optimising the amount of wheel slip to provide the best traction and trajectory control, even without snow tyres and with or without chains.

In extremely severe conditions (snow on top of ice, sand, deep mud…), it can be useful to deactivate the **ESP/ ASR** systems to allow a degree of wheel spin and so recover grip.

Deactivation

In exceptional conditions (starting a vehicle which is bogged down, stuck in snow, on soft ground...), it may be advisable to deactivate the ASR and ESP systems, so that the wheels can move freely and regain grip.

☞ Press the **"ESP OFF"** button, located in the centre of the dashboard.

If this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel and the indicator lamp on the button comes on, this indicates that the ASR and ESP systems are deactivated.

* Depending on engine type.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Reactivation

These systems are reactivated automatically each time the ignition is switched back on or from 30 mph (50 km/h).

☞ Press the **"ESP OFF"** button again to reactivate them manually.

Operating fault

If this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen, this indicates a malfunction of these systems.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

The ESP/ASR systems offer exceptional safety in normal driving, but this should not encourage the driver to take extra risks or drive at high speed.

The correct operation of these systems depends on observation of the manufacturer's recommendations regarding wheels (tyres and rims), braking components, electronic components and assembly and repair procedures.

After an impact, have these systems checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

EMERGENCY OR ASSISTANCE CALL

This system allows you to make an emergency or assistance call to the emergency services or to the dedicated CITROËN service.

For more information on the use of this function, refer to the "Audio and telematics" section.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SEAT BELTS

Front seat belts

The front seat belts are fitted with a pretensioning system and force limiter.

This system improves safety in the front seats in the event of a front impact.

Depending on the seriousness of the impact, the pretensioning system instantly tightens the seat belt against the body of the occupant.

The pretensioning seat belts are active when the ignition is on.

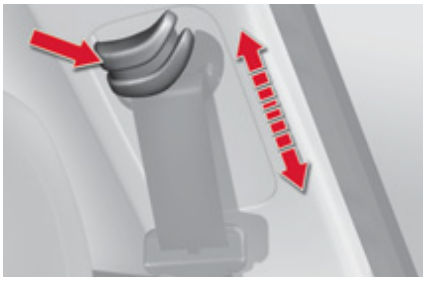
The force limiter reduces the pressure of the seat belt against the chest of the occupant, so increasing his protection.

Fastening

- ☞ Pull the belt down in front of you in a steady movement, making sure that it does not become twisted.
- ☞ Press the fastening into its buckle.
- ☞ Check that it is properly secured and that the automatic locking mechanism operates correctly by pulling sharply on the belt strap.
- ☞ The lap strap should be positioned as low down as possible in the lap and as tight as possible.
- ☞ The diagonal strap should be positioned across the chest and away from the neck.

Each belt has a reel that adjusts its length automatically to the girth of the seat occupant.

Height adjustment



When correctly adjusted, the seat belt shoulder strap falls over the middle of the shoulder.

- ☞ To adjust the belt, squeeze the control and slide it in the direction required.

Unfastening

- ☞ To unfasten the belt, press on the red button in the buckle.

The belt retracts automatically when not in use.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Centre rear seat belt

Using the seat belt (C4 Picasso)

- ☞ Open the cover **A**.
- ☞ Remove the belt tongues from their housing.
- ☞ Bring the belt tongues up to the relay ring **B**.
- ☞ Insert the attachment, then pass the tongues through the ring.
- ☞ Close the cover **A**. Make sure that the belt is correctly positioned in the recess in the cover provided for this purpose.

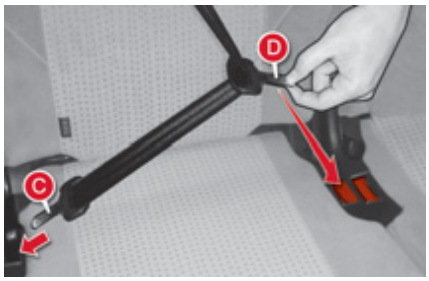
Fastening the seat belt (C4 Picasso and Grand C4 Picasso)

- ☞ Pull the strap and insert the tongue **C** into the right hand buckle, then insert the tongue **D** into the left hand buckle.
- ☞ Check that each buckle has engaged by pulling on the strap.

Before use

For safety reasons, it is essential that the seat belt passes through the relay ring.

To avoid damaging or jamming the seat belts, stow them carefully on the sides of the seat backrests.



Unfastening the seat belt (C4 Picasso and Grand C4 Picasso)

- ☞ Release the right hand buckle **C**, then the left hand buckle.
- ☞ Guide the seat belt back to its stowed position.

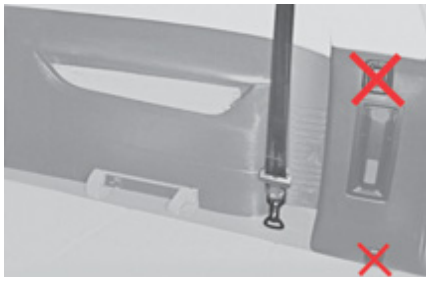
Stowing the belt tongues (C4 Picasso)

- ☞ Carry out the seat belt fastening operation (C4 Picasso) in reverse order to stow the belt tongues.

You may opt to leave the seat belt in the relay ring even if not using it.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Third row rear seat belts (Grand C4 Picasso)



Instructions for use of the third row passenger seat belts

Take care to attach the third-row passenger seat belts securely to the rings provided for this purpose.

Do not attach the belts to the luggage anchoring rings marked with a red cross, as shown in the illustration.

Stowing the tongue of the third-row seat belt

☞ Secure the tongue in the location provided on the rear pillar trim.

The third-row passenger seat belts that are not being used can be stowed in order to free up loadspace and facilitate use of the luggage cover.

Before use:
To avoid damaging or jamming the seat belts, stow them carefully on the sides of the seat backrests.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The driver must ensure that passengers use the seat belts correctly and that they are all restrained securely before setting off.

Wherever you are seated in the vehicle, always fasten your seat belt, even for short journeys.

Do not interchange the seat belt buckles as they will not fulfil their role fully.

The seat belts are fitted with an inertia reel permitting automatic adjustment of the length of the strap to your size. The seat belt is stowed automatically when not in use.

Before and after use, ensure that the seat belt is reeled in correctly.

The lower part of the strap must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis.

The upper part must be positioned in the hollow of the shoulder.

The inertia reels are fitted with an automatic locking device which comes into operation in the event of a collision, emergency braking or if the vehicle rolls over. You can release the device by pulling firmly on the strap and releasing it so that it reels in slightly.

In order to be effective, a seat belt must:

- be tightened as close to the body as possible,
- be pulled in front of you with a smooth movement, checking that it does not twist,
- be used to restrain only one person,
- not bear any trace of cuts or fraying,
- not be converted or modified to avoid affecting its performance.

In accordance with current safety regulations, for all repairs on your vehicle, go to a qualified workshop with the skills and equipment needed, which a CITROËN dealer is able to provide.

Have your seat belts checked regularly by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, particularly if the straps show signs of damage.

Clean the seat belt straps with soapy water or a textile cleaning product, sold by CITROËN dealers.

After folding or moving a seat or rear bench seat, ensure that the seat belt is positioned and reeled in correctly.

Recommendations for children

Use a suitable child seat if the passenger is less than 12 years old or shorter than one and a half metres.

Never use the same seat belt to secure more than one person.

Never allow a child to travel on your lap.

In the event of an impact

Depending on the nature and seriousness of the impact, the pretensioning device may be deployed before and independently of the airbags. Deployment of the pretensioners is accompanied by a slight discharge of harmless smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.

In all cases, the airbag warning lamp comes on.

Following an impact, have the seat belts system checked, and if necessary replaced, by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

AIRBAGS

System designed to maximise the safety of the occupants (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of violent collisions. It supplements the action of the force-limiting seat belts.

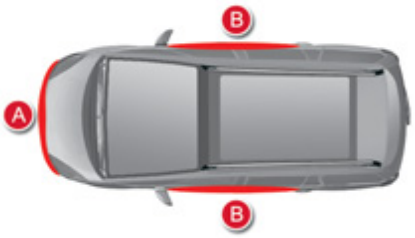
If a collision occurs, the electronic detectors record and analyse the front and side impacts sustained in the impact detection zones:

- in the case of a serious impact, the airbags are deployed instantly and protect the occupants of the vehicle (with the exception of the rear centre passenger); immediately after the impact, the airbags deflate rapidly so that they do not hinder visibility or the exit of the occupants,
- in the case of a minor or rear impact or in certain roll-over conditions, the airbags will not be deployed; the seat belt alone is sufficient to provide optimum protection in these situations.

The airbags do not operate when the ignition is switched off.

This equipment will only operate once. If a second impact occurs (during the same or a subsequent accident), the airbag will not operate.

Impact detection zones



A. Front impact zone.
B. Side impact zone.

Deployment of the airbag(s) is accompanied by a slight emission of harmless smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.

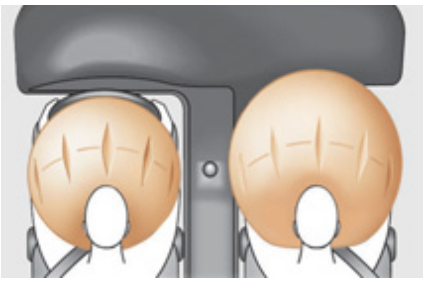
This smoke is not harmful, but sensitive individuals may experience slight irritation.

The noise of the detonation may result in a slight loss of hearing for a short time.

Front airbags

System which protects the head and chest of the driver and front passenger in the event of a front impact.

The driver's airbag is fitted in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is fitted in the dashboard above the glove box.



Deployment

The airbags are deployed simultaneously, unless the passenger's front airbag is deactivated, in the event of a serious front impact applied to all or part of the front impact zone **A**, in the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the front to the rear of the vehicle.

The front airbag inflates between the front occupant of the vehicle and the dashboard to cushion their forward movement.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Deactivation

Only the front passenger's airbag can be deactivated:

- ☞ **with the ignition off**, insert the key in the passenger airbag deactivation switch **1**,
- ☞ turn it to the **"OFF"** position,
- ☞ then, remove the key keeping the switch in this position.

This warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel when the ignition is on and until the airbag is reactivated.

To ensure the safety of your child, it is imperative that the passenger airbag is deactivated when you install a "rearwards-facing" child seat on the front passenger seat.

Otherwise, the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were deployed.

Activation

When you remove the child seat, turn switch **1** to the **"ON"** position to reactivate the airbag and so ensure the safety of your front passenger in the event of an impact.

Operating fault

If this warning lamp comes on on the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible warning and a message in the multifunction screen, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked. The airbags may no longer be deployed in the event of a serious impact.

If this warning lamp flashes, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

If both airbag warning lamps come on continuously, do not install a "rearwards-facing" child seat on the front passenger seat.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Lateral airbags*

System which protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the chest.

Each lateral airbag is fitted in the front seat back frame, on the door side.

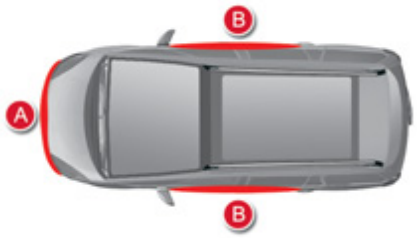
Operation

It is deployed unilaterally in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.

The lateral airbag inflates between the front occupant of the vehicle and the corresponding door trim panel.

* According to country.

Impact detection zones



A. Front impact zone.
B. Side impact zone.

Curtain airbags*

System which protects the driver and passengers (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of head injuries.

Each curtain airbag is fitted in the pillars and the upper part of the passenger compartment.

* According to country.

Operation

It is deployed at the same time as the corresponding lateral airbag in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.

The curtain airbag inflates between the front or rear occupant of the vehicle and the windows.

> In the event of a minor impact or bump on the side of the vehicle or if the vehicle rolls over, the airbag may not be deployed.
>
> The airbag is not deployed in the event of a rear or front collision.

Operating fault

If this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked. The airbags may no longer be deployed in the event of a serious impact.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

For the airbags to be fully effective, observe the following safety rules:

Sit in a normal upright position.

Wear a correctly adjusted seat belt.

Do not leave anything between the occupants and the airbags (a child, pet, object...). This could hamper the operation of the airbags or injure the occupants.

After an accident or if the vehicle has been stolen or broken into, have the airbag systems checked.

All work on the airbag system must be carried out by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Even if all of the precautions mentioned are observed, a risk of injury or of minor burns to the head, chest or arms when an airbag is deployed cannot be ruled out. The bag inflates almost instantly (within a few milliseconds) then deflates within the same time discharging the hot gas via openings provided for this purpose.

Front airbags

Do not drive holding the steering wheel by its spokes or resting your hands on the centre part of the wheel.

Passengers must not place their feet on the dashboard.

If possible, do not smoke as deployment of the airbags can cause burns or the risk of injury from a cigarette or pipe.

Never remove or pierce the steering wheel or hit it violently.

Lateral airbags

Use only approved covers on the seats, compatible with the deployment the lateral airbags. For information on the range of seat covers suitable for your vehicle, you can contact a CITROËN dealer (see "Practical information - § Accessories").

Do not fix or attach anything to the seat backs (clothing...). This could cause injury to the chest or arms if the lateral airbag is deployed.

Do not sit with the upper part of the body any nearer to the door than necessary.

Curtain airbags

Do not fix or attach anything to the roof. This could cause injury to the head if the curtain airbag is deployed.

If fitted on your vehicle, do not remove the grab handles installed on the roof, they play a part in securing the curtain airbags.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

The electric parking brake operates as follows:

- **automatic application/release**
  Application is automatic when the engine stops, release is automatic on use of the accelerator (active by default).
- **manual application/release**
  Manual application/release of the parking brake is possible by pulling control lever **A** while pressing the brake pedal.

Manual application

With the vehicle stationary, to apply the parking brake whether the engine is running or not, **pull** control lever **A**.

The application of the parking brake is confirmed by:

- the illumination of the warning lamp **P** in control lever **A** and in the instrument panel,
- the display of a message "Parking brake on" in the multi-function screen.

When the driver's door is opened with the engine running, a beep is heard and a message displayed if the parking brake has not been applied.

Before getting out of the vehicle, check that the warning lamp **P** is on fixed in the instrument panel (not flashing).

Manual release

With the ignition on or the engine running, to release the parking brake, press on the brake pedal, or the accelerator, **pull then release** control lever **A**.

The full application of the parking brake is confirmed by:

- the warning lamp **P** in control lever **A** and in the instrument panel going off,
- the display of a message "Parking brake off" in the multi-function screen.

If you pull control lever **A** without pressing the brake pedal, the parking brake will not be released and the "Foot on brake" warning lamp will come on in the instrument panel.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Maximum application

If necessary, you can use **maximum application** of the parking brake. It is obtained by means of a **long pull** on control lever **A**, until you see the message "Parking brake on" and an audible signal is heard.

Maximum application is essential:

- when towing a caravan or a trailer, if the automatic functions are activated but you are applying the parking brake manually,
- when the gradient you are parked on is variable in its effect (e.g. on a ferry, in a lorry, during towing),
- when towing, when loaded or when parking on a gradient, turn the front wheels towards the pavement and engage a gear when you park,
- after a maximum application, the release time will be longer.

Automatic application, engine off

With the vehicle stationary, the parking brake **is automatically applied when the engine is switched off.**

The application of the parking brake is confirmed by:

- the illumination of warning lamp **P** in control lever **A** and in the instrument panel,
- the display of a message "Parking brake on" in the multifunction screen.

The normal operating sound will confirm to you the application/release of the electric parking brake.

> Before leaving the vehicle, check that warning lamp **P** in the instrument panel is on fixed, not flashing.
>
> Never leave a child alone inside the vehicle with the ignition on, as they could release the parking brake.

Automatic release

The electric parking brake **releases automatically and progressively** when you press the accelerator:

- ☞ **Manual gearbox (first gear or reverse gear engaged):** press down fully on the clutch pedal then press on the accelerator pedal and move off.
- ☞ **Automatic gearbox**: accelerate with the selector in position **D**, **M** or **R**.
- ☞ **Electronic gearbox**: accelerate with the selector in position **A**, **M** or **R**.

Full release of the parking brake is confirmed by:

- the warning lamp **P** in control lever **A** and in the instrument panel going off,
- the display of a message "Parking brake off" in the multifunction screen.

> When stationary, with the engine running, do not press the accelerator pedal unnecessarily, as you may release the parking brake.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To immobilise the vehicle, engine running

To immobilise the vehicle when stationary with the engine running, you must apply the parking brake manually by **pulling** on control lever **A**.

The application of the parking brake is confirmed by:

- the illumination of warning lamp **P** in control **A** and in the instrument panel,
- the display of a message "Parking brake on" in the multifunction screen.

When the driver's door is opened, a beep is heard and a message displayed if the parking brake has not been applied.

Before leaving the vehicle, check that warning lamp **P** in the instrument panel is on fixed (not flashing).

Activation/Deactivation of the automatic functions*

The automatic application when the engine is switched off and the automatic release when you press the accelerator can be deactivated. Activation/deactivation is performed using the configuration menu of the multifunction screen. To do so, select "Vehicle parameters/Comfort/ Automatic handbrake."

The deactivation of these functions is confirmed by the lighting of this warning lamp in the instrument panel.

With the automatic functions deactivated, the application and release of the parking brake are done manually.

Particular situations

In certain situations (e.g. starting the engine), the parking brake can automatically alter its force. This is normal operation.

To move your vehicle without starting the engine (towing, etc...), but with the **ignition on**, press the brake pedal and release the parking brake **by pulling** then **releasing** control lever **A**.

The full release of the parking brake is confirmed by the warning lamp **P** (red) in the instrument panel going off and the display of a message "Parking brake off" in the multifunction screen.

If the parking brake malfunctions **while applied or if the battery** runs flat, an emergency release remains possible.

* According to country

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Dynamic emergency braking

In the event of a failure of the vehicle's main braking system or in an exceptional situation (e.g. driver taken ill, under instruction, etc) a continuous pull on the control lever **A** will stop the vehicle.

The electronic stability programme (ESP) provides stability during dynamic emergency braking.

If the dynamic emergency braking malfunctions, one of the following messages will be displayed in the multifunction screen:

- "Parking brake faulty".
- "Parking brake control faulty".

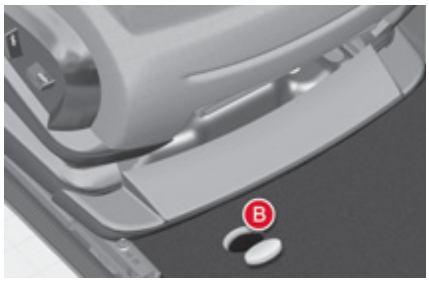
ESP

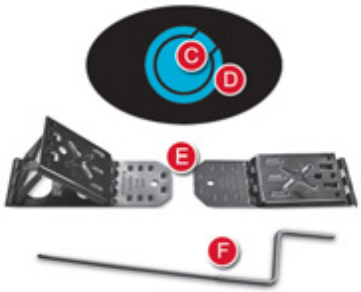
If a failure of the ESP system is signalled by the illumination of this warning lamp, then braking stability is not guaranteed. In this event, stability must be assured by the driver by repeating alternate "pull-release" actions on control lever **A**.

The dynamic emergency braking must only be used in exceptional circumstances.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Emergency release





In the event of a malfunction of the electric parking brake or the battery running flat, an emergency mechanism can release the parking brake.

☞ Immobilise the vehicle, with the engine running, by engaging first gear (manual gearbox), position **P** (automatic gearbox) or **M** or **R** (6-speed electronic gearbox system).

☞ Switch off the engine, but leave the ignition on.

If the vehicle cannot be immobilised, do not do anything and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

☞ Fetch the vehicle blocks **E** and the release tool **F** (handle) from the toolbox.

☞ If on a gradient: chock the vehicle by placing the blocks in front of or behind the front wheels, on the falling side of the gradient.

If on level ground: chock the vehicle by placing the blocks in front of and behind one of the front wheels.

☞ Slide the front left-hand seat back as far as possible.

☞ **Lift up the floor plug B on the carpet in front of the seat.**

☞ Pierce the tab **C** on the tube **D** with the release tool **F**.

☞ Place the end of the handle **F** in the tube **D**.

☞ Turn the release tool **F clockwise. For safety reasons**, it is **essential** to continue turning the device as far as it will go. The parking brake is released.

☞ Remove the release tool **F** and store it with the blocks **E** in the toolbox.

- The operation of the parking brake reinitialises itself when the ignition is switched off then on again. If the reinitialisation of the parking brake proves impossible, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
- The subsequent time required for application may be longer than during normal operation.

When the release tool **F** is engaged, do not operate the control lever or the ignition switch.
Immobilisation of the vehicle is no longer assured once the manual emergency release has been used.
The emergency release system cannot be used to apply the parking brake mechanically.
Take care not to allow moisture or dust in the proximity of the plug.
For safety reasons, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible to have the plug replaced.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Operating faults

If any of these instances arises, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

	SITUATION	CONSEQUENCES
1	Electric parking brake fault and display of message "**Parking brake faulty**" and the following warning lamps: P SERVICE	If the electric parking brake fault warning lamp and the service warning lamp come on, position the vehicle in a safe location (on flat ground, with a gear engaged).
2	Display of message "**Parking brake faulty**" and the following warning lamps: AUTO P OFF ESP SERVICE	- The automatic functions are deactivated. - Hill start assist is not available. - The electric parking brake is only available manually.
3	Display of message "**Parking brake faulty**" and the following warning lamps: ESP SERVICE	- The manual release of the electric parking brake is not available. - Hill start assist is not available. - The automatic functions and manual application are still available.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

	SITUATION	CONSEQUENCES
4	Display of message "**Parking brake faulty**" and the following warning lamps: AUTO P OFF ESP SERVICE P and/or P flashing	- The automatic functions are deactivated. - Hill start assist is not available. To apply the electric parking brake: ☞ Immobilise the vehicle and switch off the ignition ☞ Pull the control lever for at least 5 seconds or until maximum application. ☞ Switch on the ignition and check that the electric parking brake warning lamps are on. - Application may take longer than in normal operation. - If warning lamp **P** flashes or if the warning lamps do not come on when the ignition is switched on, this method does not work. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. To release the electric parking brake: ☞ Switch on the ignition. ☞ Pull the control lever and hold it for approximately 3 seconds.
5	Display of message "**Parking brake control faulty – auto parking brake activated**" and the following warning lamps: P and/or P flashing	- Only the functions for automatic application on switching off the engine and automatic release on acceleration are available. - Manual application/release of the electric parking brake and dynamic emergency braking are unavailable.
6	Battery fault – +	- Lighting of the battery warning lamp makes it essential to stop the vehicle as soon as traffic allows. Stop and immobilise your vehicle. - Apply the electric parking brake before switching off the engine.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

HILL START ASSIST

System which holds your vehicle temporarily (approximately 2 seconds) when starting on a slope, the time it takes to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal.

This function is only active when:

- the vehicle is completely stationary, with your foot on the brake pedal,
- in particular conditions on a slope,
- with the driver's door closed.

The hill start assist cannot be deactivated.

Operation

On an ascending slope, with the vehicle stationary, the vehicle is held for a brief moment when you release the brake pedal:

- provided you are in first gear or neutral on a manual gearbox,
- provided you are in position **A** or **M** with the electronic gearbox system,
- provided you are in position **D** or **M** on an automatic gearbox.

On a descending slope, with the vehicle stationary and reverse gear engaged, the vehicle is held momentarily when you release the brake pedal.

Do not exit the vehicle while it is being held in the hill start assist phase.

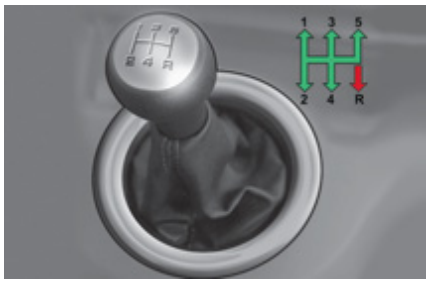
If you need to exit the vehicle with the engine running, manually apply the parking brake and ensure that the warning lamp **P** (red) in the instrument panel is on (not flashing).

Operating fault

If a malfunction of the system occurs, these warning lamps come on. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

5-SPEED MANUAL GEARBOX



Starting the vehicle

- ☞ Check that the gear lever is in neutral.
- ☞ Do not touch the accelerator.
- ☞ For Diesel engines: turn the key to position **M** and wait until the pre-heating warning lamp switches off if it has come on.
- ☞ Operate the starter, turning the key until the engine starts (no more than ten seconds).
- ☞ In temperatures lower than 0°C, declutch while operating the starter to facilitate starting.

Engaging reverse gear

- ☞ Move the gear lever to the right then back.

Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

GEAR SHIFT INDICATOR*

System which reduces fuel consumption by advising the driver to change up on vehicles fitted with a manual gearbox.

Operation

The system intervenes only when driving economically.

Depending on the driving situation and your vehicle's equipment, the system may advise you to skip one or more gears. You can follow this instruction without engaging the intermediate gears.

The gear recommended should not be considered compulsory. In fact, the configuration of the road, the amount of traffic and safety remain determining factors when choosing the best gear. Therefore, the driver remains responsible for deciding whether or not to follow the advice given by the system.

This function cannot be deactivated.

Example:

- You are in third gear.
- You press the accelerator pedal moderately.
- The system may suggest that you engage a higher gear, if appropriate.

The information appears in the form of an arrow in the instrument panel screen.

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, this arrow may be accompanied by the recommended gear.

In the case of driving which makes particular demands on the performance of the engine (firm pressure on the accelerator pedal, for example, when overtaking...), the system will not recommend a gear change.

The system never suggests:

- engaging first gear,
- engaging reverse gear,
- engaging a lower gear.

IX

* According to engine.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

6-SPEED ELECTRONIC GEARBOX SYSTEM

The 6-speed electronic gearbox offers a choice between the comfort of fully automatic operation or the driving pleasure of manual gear changing.

You have a choice of two driving modes:

- **automatic** mode for automatic control of the gears by the gearbox,
- **manual** mode for sequential changing of the gears by the driver.

Mode selection

☞ Automated mode: gear lever **2** in position **A**.

☞ Manual mode: gear lever **2** in position **M**.

In automated mode, temporary manual operation is possible any time by using one of the paddles **1**.

Displays in the instrument panel

- The gear lever position is displayed in the instrument panel, on the left on the A and C multifunction screens and on the right on NaviDrive and MyWay multifunction screens.
- A back-lit position grille associated with the gear lever shows the position selected.

When the ignition is on, illumination of the service warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and the message "Gearbox faulty" indicates a malfunction.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

For safety:

☞ position **N** can only be disengaged if you are pressing the brake pedal.

☞ if the gearbox is in position **N** but the gear lever position is different, reposition the gear lever on **N** in order to be able to start.

Moving off

☞ To start the engine, the gear lever must be in position **N**.

☞ Press firmly on the brake pedal.

☞ Operate the starter.

☞ When the engine is running, place the gear lever on **R**, **A** or **M** as desired.

☞ In the instrument panel, check the position engaged.

☞ Release the brake pedal and accelerate.

If the gear lever is not in position **N**, and/or if the brake pedal is not pressed, the corresponding warning lamp(s) are displayed and a message informs you that at least one of these two conditions is not met.

In this case, the engine will not start, recommence the above procedure.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Reverse gear

To engage reverse, the vehicle must be immobilised with your foot on the brake pedal.

☞ Move the gear lever to **R**.

At low speeds, if reverse is selected, the **N** indicator flashes and the gearbox goes into neutral automatically.

To engage reverse, put the gear lever in position **N**, then in position **R**.

Neutral

☞ Move the gear lever to **N**.

If the vehicle is moving, do not select this position even momentarily.

Automatic mode

☞ Move the gear lever to **A**.

Manual mode

☞ Move the gear lever to **M**.

☞ Pull the "**+**" paddle to change up a gear.

☞ Pull the "**-**" paddle to change down a gear.

When the engine is running, before accelerating to move the vehicle, make sure that the position engaged on the selector grille or in the instrument panel is either: **R**, **A** or **M**

Do not leave the vehicle with the engine running in **R**, **A** or **M**.

Operation in automatic mode

☞ Move the gear lever to position **A**. The warning lamp **A** comes on in the instrument panel to confirm the selection.

The gearbox then functions in automatic mode, without any action on your part.

It constantly selects the gear that is best suited to the following conditions:

- driving style,
- road profile,
- optimum fuel consumption.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Temporary manual operation when in automatic mode

By pulling either of the "**+**" or "**-**" paddles, you can exercise temporary control over the gearbox.

The request to change gear will be taken into account. You will still be in automatic mode. The warning lamp **A** remains on in the instrument panel.

This function enables you to anticipate certain situations such as the approach of a bend or the need to overtake another vehicle.

Cancellation of automatic mode

The change from position **A** (driving in automatic mode) to position **M** (driving in manual mode) or vice versa can be made at any time. The warning lamp **A** goes off in the instrument panel.

Operation in manual mode

☞ Move the gear lever to position **M**.

Steering mounted paddle controls

The steering mounted paddles are used for the six forward gears.

Changing gear

☞ Pull the "**+**" paddle to change up a gear.

☞ Pull the "**-**" paddle to change down a gear.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The paddles cannot be used to select neutral or reverse gear, or to exit reverse gear.

- If the vehicle stops or reduces speed (for example when approaching a stop sign), the gearbox changes down automatically, to first gear if needed.
- In manual mode, it is not necessary to release the accelerator completely during gear changes.
- A request to change gear is accepted only if the engine speed permits it.
- For safety reasons, depending on the engine speed, a change down may be performed automatically.

In situations of high engine speeds (heavy acceleration), a change up will not occur unless the driver operates the paddle.

Acceleration

For optimum acceleration (e.g. to overtake another vehicle), simply press the pedal beyond the point of resistance at the end of its travel, by pressing down firmly.

Vehicle stationary, with the engine running

In the event of a prolonged stop with the engine running, the gearbox changes automatically to neutral **N**.

Stopping the vehicle

Before stopping the engine, you can choose:

☞ to leave the vehicle in neutral; move the gear lever to position **N**.

☞ to leave the vehicle with a gear engaged (**R**, **A** or **M**); place the gear lever in the chosen position prior to stopping the engine. In this case, the vehicle cannot be moved.

In all cases, it is essential to apply the parking brake. Check that the parking brake warning lamp is on in the instrument panel.

Do not use the accelerator to hold your vehicle on a gradient. Use either the brake pedal or the parking brake.

Before doing anything in the engine compartment, check that the gear lever is in neutral **N**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

STOP & START

The Stop & Start system puts the engine temporarily into standby - STOP mode - during stops in the traffic (red lights, traffic jams, or other...). The engine restarts automatically - START mode - as soon as you want to move off. The restart takes place instantly, quickly and silently.

Perfect for urban use, the Stop & Start system reduces fuel consumption and exhaust emissions as well as the noise level when stationary.

Operation

Going into engine STOP mode

ECO The **"ECO"** warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel and the engine goes into standby:

- **with the electronic gearbox system**, at speeds below 4 mph (6 km/h), press the brake pedal or put the gear lever in position **N**.

If your vehicle is fitted with the system, a time counter calculates the sum of the periods in STOP mode during a journey. It rests itself to zero every time the ignition is switched on with the key.

For your comfort, during parking maoeuvres, STOP mode is not available for a few seconds after coming out of reverse gear.

STOP mode does not affect the functionality of the vehicle, such as for example, braking, power steering...

Never refuel with the engine in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition with the key.

Special cases: STOP mode not available

ECO STOP mode is not invoked when:

- the driver's door is open,
- the driver's seat belt is not fastened,
- the vehicle has not exceeded 6 mph (10 km/h) since the last engine start using the key,
- the electric parking brake is applied or being applied,
- the engine is needed to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment,
- demisting is active,
- some special conditions (battery charge, engine temperature, braking assistance, ambient temperature...) where the engine is needed to assure control of a system.

In this case, the **"ECO"** warning lamp flashes for a few seconds then goes off.

This operation is perfectly normal.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Going into engine START mode

ECO The **"ECO"** warning lamp goes off and the engine starts with the **electronic gearbox system**:

- gear lever in position **A** or **M**, release the brake pedal,
- or gear lever in position **N** and the brake pedal released, move the gear lever to position **A** or **M**,
- or engage reverse gear.

Special cases: START invoked automatically

ECO START mode is invoked automatically when:

- the driver's door is open,
- the driver's seat belt is not fastened,
- the speed of the vehicle exceeds 7 mph (11 km/h) with the electronic gearbox system,
- the electric parking brake is being applied,
- some special conditions (battery charge, engine temperature, braking assistance, ambient temperature...) where the engine is needed for control of a system.

In this case the **"ECO"** warning lamp flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

This operation is perfectly normal.

Deactivation

At any time, press the **"ECO OFF"** switch to deactivate the system.

This is confirmed by the switch warning lamp coming on accompanied by a message in the screen.

If the system has been deactivated in STOP mode, the engine restarts immediately.

Reactivation

Press the **"ECO OFF"** switch again.

The system is active again; this is confirmed by the switch warning lamp going off and a message in the screen.

The system is reactivated automatically at every new start using the key.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Operating fault

In the event of a fault with the system, the **"ECO OFF"** switch warning lamp flashes then comes on continuously.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

In the event of a fault in STOP mode, the vehicle may stall. It is then necessary to switch off the ignition and start the engine again using the key.

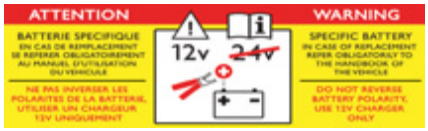
Maintenance

Before doing anything under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid any risk of injury resulting from automatic operation of START mode.

This system requires a 12 V battery with a special specification and technology (reference numbers available from CITROËN dealers).

Fitting a battery not listed by CITROËN introduces the risk of malfunction of the system.

To charge the battery, use a 12 V charger and observe the polarity.



The Stop & Start system makes use of advanced technology. For any work on the system go to a qualified workshop with the skills and equipment required, which a CITROËN dealer is able to provide.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

AUTOMATIC GEARBOX

Automatic gearbox which offers a choice between the ease of fully automatic operation or the driving pleasure of manual gear changing.

There is a choice of two driving modes:

- **automatic** operation for electronic control of the gears by the gearbox,
- **manual** operation for sequential changing of the gears by the driver.

Mode selection

☞ Automatic mode: gear lever **1** in position **D**,

☞ Manual mode: gear lever **1** in position **M**.

Displays in the instrument panel

Multifunction screen A or C

MyWay or NaviDrive multifunction screen

The position of the gear lever is displayed in the instrument panel, on the left on the A and C multifunction screens and on the right in the MyWay and NaviDrive multifunction screens.

A grille associated with the gear lever also allows you to see the selected position.

Position **P** can only be disengaged if pressing the brake pedal.

On opening a door, there is an audible signal if the gear lever is not in position **P**.

In all circumstances, ensure that the gear lever is in position **P** before leaving your vehicle.

If **P** is displayed in the instrument panel but the position of the gear lever is different, reposition the gear lever on **P** so that you can start the vehicle.

Never press the brake and accelerator pedals simultaneously. Braking and acceleration should be done only with the right foot. Pressing both pedals simultaneously introduces a risk of damage to the gearbox.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Moving off

- To start the engine, press the brake pedal and place the gear lever in position **P**.
- Operate the starter.
- When the engine is running, place the gear lever on **R**, **D** or **M** as required.
- Check, in the instrument panel, the position engaged.
- Release the brake pedal and accelerate.

If the gear lever is not in position **P**, a message "Place automatic gearbox in position **P**" is displayed in the multifunction screen. It is accompanied by an audible signal and flashing of **P** in the instrument panel.

To avoid any difference between the position of the gear lever and the true position of the gearbox, always come out of position **P** with the ignition on and your foot on the brake.

Foot on the brake

- When this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, press the brake pedal to disengage the gear lever from position **P**.

Park

This position of the gear lever is used to prevent the vehicle from moving when you are stationary.

- To select position **P,** move the gear lever back to the highest position (towards **R**), then push it forwards and then to the left.
- To exit position **P**, move the gear lever to the right and then to the position you want.
- Only engage this position when the vehicle is completely stationary. In this position, the front wheels are locked. Make sure that the gear lever is correctly positioned.

Reverse gear

Only engage this position when the vehicle is stationary. To prevent snatching, do not accelerate too soon after selection.

Neutral

Never select position **N** if the vehicle is moving.

Never select positions **P** or **R** unless the vehicle is stationary.

If, while the vehicle is moving, position **N** is engaged inadvertently, allow the engine to idle before engaging position **D** or **M**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Automatic operation

Position of the gear lever for automatic gear changing.

☞ Move the gear lever to position **D**.

The gearbox constantly selects the gear that is best suited to the following conditions:

- driving style,
- road profile,
- vehicle load.

The gearbox is then operating in **auto-adaptive** mode, without requiring any intervention on your part.

For certain manoeuvres (for example overtaking), you can obtain maximum acceleration by pressing the accelerator pedal down hard, which then produces an automatic change down to a lower gear.

When braking, the gearbox may change down automatically in order to provide effective engine braking.

If you lift your foot off the accelerator abruptly, the gearbox will not change up.

Temporary manual operation when in automatic mode

At any time, operating the "**+**" or "**-**" paddle allows you to exercise temporary control over the gearbox. The request to change gear will be taken into account. You will still be in automatic mode. The indicator **D** remains on in the instrument panel.

This function enables you to anticipate certain situations such as the approach of a bend or the need to overtake another vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Manual operation

Position of the gear lever for manual gear changing.

☞ Move the gear lever to position **M**.

☞ Pull the "**+**" paddle to change up a gear.

☞ Pull the "**-**" paddle to change down a gear.

- If the vehicle stops or reduces speed (for example when approaching a stop sign), the gearbox changes down automatically to first gear.
- In manual mode, it is not necessary to release the accelerator during gear changes.
- A request to change gear is accepted only if the engine speed permits it.
- For safety reasons, depending on the engine speed, a change up or down may be performed automatically.
- It is possible at any time to change mode, by moving the gear lever from position **D** to position **M** or vice versa.

Flashing of the indicator for the position requested signals that this position is not yet obtained.

If the indicator is on fixed, the position is confirmed.

Display of a dash in the rev counter indicates a malfunction. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Illumination of the service warning lamp accompanied by a message and an audible signal indicates an operating fault. In this case:

- a marked snatching may be felt when selecting **R** for reverse gear,
- the gearbox is locked in one gear,
- do not exceed a speed of 60 mph (approximately 100 km/h).

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

FIXED CENTRED CONTROLS STEERING WHEEL

Cruise control/speed limiter and parking sensor controls

1. Activation of the parking sensors function.
2. Selection of cruise control or speed limiter.
3. Activation/Deactivation of speed limiter.
   Deactivation/Reactivation of cruise control.
4. Increase speed/Activation of cruise control.
5. Decrease speed/Activation of cruise control.

Audio system controls

A. Volume decrease.
B. Volume increase.
C. Search of higher frequencies.
D. Scrolling pre-set stations.
E. Mute.
(see "Audio and Telematics" section)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Optional function controls

1. Call/Hang up the telephone (see "Audio and Telematics" section).
2. Rheostat for dashboard lighting.
3. Start of voice recognition (see "Audio and Telematics" section).
4. Personalisation button:
   - courtesy lamp on/off or
   - diagnostics

   Press this button for more than two seconds to display the personalisation menu.
5. Air recirculation.

Multifunction screen controls

A. Selection of the type of information to be displayed on the right of the screen (radio, trip computer, navigation/guidance…).

For the multifunction screen A, choice of activation/deactivation of functions and setting choices.

B. Access to the "Main Menu"*.

C. Confirmation of the function chosen or of the value modified.

Call/Hang up (see "Audio and Telematics" section).

D. Scrolling in the multifunction screen.

E. Cancellation of the current operation or return to the previous display.

* To comply with legislation in certain countries, the "Menu" control may be deactivated while the vehicle is in motion.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SPEED LIMITER

System which prevents the vehicle from exceeding the speed programmed by the driver.

Once the limit speed has been reached, the accelerator pedal no longer has any effect.

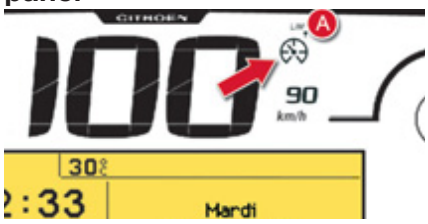
The speed limiter is switched on manually: a speed of at least 20 mph (approximately 30 km/h) must be programmed.

The speed limiter cannot, in any circumstances, take the place of the observance of speed limits or of the vigilance and responsibility of the driver.

Steering mounted controls

The speed limiter controls are located on the left-hand side of the steering wheel.

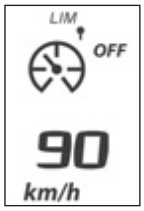
Displays in the instrument panel



The programmed information is grouped together in zone **A** of the instrument panel screen.

Programming

Rotate the control **1** to the **"LIM"** position.



On selection of the function, the previous memorised speed and the information **"OFF"** are displayed in the instrument panel.

With the engine running, you can adjust the memorised maximum speed , by means of short or long presses on:

- ☞ button **4** to increase the memorised maximum speed,
- ☞ button **2** to decrease the memorised maximum speed.

Successive presses will modify the maximum speed in steps of 1 mph (1 km/h) and a sustained press in steps of 3 mph (5 km/h).

Activation

When the desired maximum speed is displayed, press button **3** so that the limitation is activated.

The information **"OFF"** then disappears from the instrument panel screen.

While the function is active, pressing the accelerator pedal will not enable the programmed speed to be exceeded, except if you press the pedal hard down to beyond the end-of-travel switch.

The speed of your vehicle may vary slightly in relation to that memorised.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Deactivation

Press on button **3**.

This action causes the information **"OFF"** to appear on the instrument panel screen.

This action does not cancel the memorised maximum speed which remains displayed in zone **A** of the instrument panel.

Override of the programmed speed

The accelerator pedal is equipped with an end-of-travel switch. If you action this switch by pressing the pedal hard down, you can exceed the memorised maximum speed at any time.

During the time the speed is being exceeded, the displayed speed flashes.

You have only to release the accelerator pedal to return below the maximum speed and render the function active again.

If during the operation of the speed limiter, the system is unable to keep within the maximum speed (for example on a steep descent or under heavy acceleration) then the speed flashes. Adapt your speed as necessary.

The function will re-engage when your speed returns below the desired maximum speed.

Return to normal driving

☞ By moving the control **1** from position **"LIM"** to position **0**.

☞ By the engine stopping.

The speed previously chosen is still memorised.

Operating fault

If there is a speed limiter malfunction, a message will display accompanied by an audible signal and lighting of the service warning lamp.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

On a steep downhill gradient or on sharp acceleration, the speed limiter will not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed.

Use of floor mats that are not approved by CITROËN may hinder access to the accelerator pedal and thus interfere with the functioning of the speed limiter.

To avoid any risk of interfering with the pedals:

- check that the floor mat is correctly positioned,
- never use more than one floor mat.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CRUISE CONTROL

System which automatically maintains the vehicle speed programmed by the driver, without any action on the accelerator pedal.

The cruise control is switched on manually: the vehicle speed must be at least 25 mph (approximately 40 km/h) and you must engage:

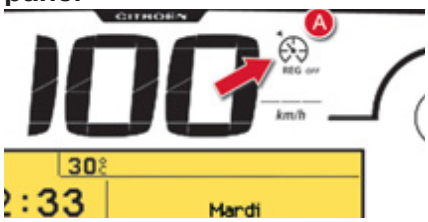
- fourth gear on a manual gearbox,
- second gear, in manual mode, on an electronic or automatic gearbox,
- position **A** on an electronic gearbox or **D** on an automatic gearbox.

The cruise control cannot, in any circumstances, take the place of the observance of speed limits or of the vigilance and responsibility of the driver.

Steering mounted controls

The cruise control switches are located on the left-hand side of the steering wheel.

Displays in the instrument panel

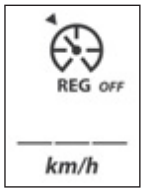


The programmed information is grouped together in zone **A** of the instrument panel screen.

Programming

Rotate the control **1** to the **"REG"** position.

Activation



On selection of the function via control **1, no cruise speed has yet been memorised.**

Once the desired speed has been reached using the accelerator, press button **2** or **4**. The cruise speed is then memorised. It is displayed in zone **A** of the instrument panel.

You can then release the accelerator pedal. The vehicle will automatically keep to the speed chosen.

The speed of your vehicle may vary slightly in relation to that memorised.

You can adjust the memorised speed in the instrument panel screen by pressing:

☞ button **4** to increase the speed,

☞ button **2** to decrease the speed.

Successive presses modify the cruise speed in steps of 1 mph (1 km/h) and a sustained press in steps of 3 mph (5 km/h).

Deactivation

☞ Either by pressing the brake or the clutch pedal.

☞ Or by pressing button **3**.

☞ Or if either the ESP or the ASR system is active.

The cruise control is not active if the gear lever is in neutral.

These actions cause the information **"OFF"** to appear in the instrument panel screen.

These actions do not cancel the cruise speed which remains displayed in the instrument panel.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Reactivation

☞ **By recall of the memorised speed**

After a disengagement, press on button **3**. Your vehicle automatically returns to the memorised cruise speed which is displayed in zone **A**.

If the memorised cruise speed is higher than the current speed, the vehicle will accelerate to reach the former.

☞ **By selection of the current speed**

Press on button **2** or **4** once the desired speed has been reached. The information **"OFF"** will then disappear from the instrument panel display.

Overriding the programmed speed

During the operation of cruise control, it is always possible to use the accelerator to go faster than the cruise speed (for example to overtake another vehicle). The speed displayed in zone **A** flashes.

You have only to release the accelerator pedal to return to the cruise speed.

If during the operation of cruise control, the system is unable to keep within the memorised speed (for example on a steep descent), then the speed flashes. Adapt your speed as necessary.

Return to normal driving

☞ By an action on the control **1** from position **"REG"** to position **0**.

☞ By the engine stopping.

The cruise speed previously chosen is no longer memorised.

Operating fault

If there is a malfunction, a message will display accompanied by an audible signal and lighting of the service warning lamp.

Have it it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Cruise control should only be used when the driving conditions allow you to drive at a constant speed.

Do not use it in heavy traffic, or on dangerous or slippery roads.

The driver must remain attentive and in full control of his vehicle.

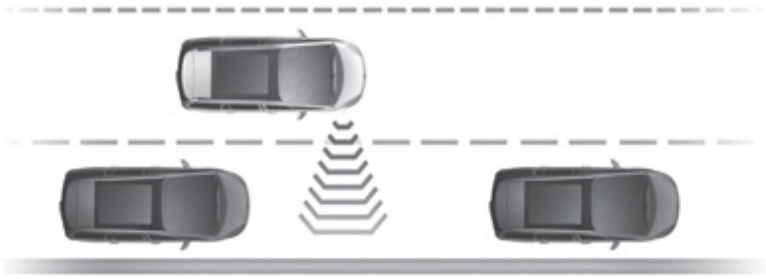
You are recommended to always keep your feet within range of the pedals.

To avoid any risk of interfering with the pedals:

- check that the floor mat is correctly positioned,
- never use more than one floor mat.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

PARKING SPACE SENSORS



After measuring the parking space available between two vehicles or obstacles, this system gives you information on:

- the possibility of fitting into a free space, depending on the dimensions of your vehicle and the distances needed for manoeuvring,
- the level of difficulty of the manoeuvre to be performed.

The system does not measure spaces which are clearly much smaller or larger than the size of the vehicle.

Displays in the instrument panel

The parking space sensor function warning lamp can have three different states:

- **off:** the function is not selected,
- **on fixed:** the function is selected but the conditions for measurement are not yet met (direction indicator not operating, speed too high) or the measurement phase has ended,
- **flashing:** measurement is in progress or the message is being displayed.

You can activate the "parking space sensor" function by pressing button **A.** The fixed illumination of the warning lamp indicates that the function is selected.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Operation

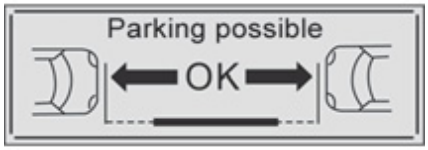
You have identified a parking space:

- ☞ Press button **A** to activate the function.
- ☞ Activate the direction indicator on the side where the space is to be measured.
- ☞ During the measuring, go forward the length of the space, at a speed less than 12 mph (approximately 20 km/h), to prepare for your manoeuvre.

  The system then measures the size of the space.
- ☞ The system informs you of the level of difficulty of the manoeuvre via a message in the multi-function screen accompanied by an audible signal.

The function displays the following types of message:

Parking possible



Parking difficult

Parking not advised

The function deactivates itself automatically:

- when you engage reverse gear,
- when you switch off the ignition,
- five minutes after activation of the function or after the last measurement operation,
- if the vehicle speed exceeds the threshold of 45 mph (approximately 70 km/h) for one minute.

If the lateral distance between your vehicle and the parking space is too great, the system may not operate.

- The function remains available after each measurement and so can measure a number of places successively.
- In bad weather or in winter, ensure that the sensors are not covered by dirt, or by ice or snow.
- The parking space sensor function deactivates the front parking sensors during the space measuring phase when you are in forward gear.

If there is a malfunction, have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

LANE DEPARTURE WARNING SYSTEM

System which detects the involuntary crossing of longitudinal traffic lane markings on the ground (solid or broken line).

Sensors, fitted below the front bumper, trigger a warning if the vehicle drifts over a lane marking (speed higher than 50 mph (80 km/h)).

This system is particularly useful on motorways and main roads.

The lane departure warning system cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance and responsibility on the part of the driver.

Activation

☞ Press this button, the indicator lamp comes on.

Deactivation

☞ Press this button again, the indicator lamp goes off.

The status of the system remains in the memory when the ignition is switched off.

Detection

You are warned by the vibration of the driver's seat cushion:

- on the right-hand side, if the marking on the ground has been crossed on the right,
- on the left-hand side, if the marking on the ground has been crossed on the left.

No warning is transmitted while the direction indicator is active and for approximately 20 seconds after the direction indicator is switched off.

A warning may be transmitted if a direction marking (e.g. arrow) or non-standard marking (e.g. graffiti) is crossed.

Operating fault

In the event of a malfunction, the service warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

The detection may be impeded:

- if the sensors are dirty (mud, snow...),
- if the markings on the ground are worn,
- if there is little contrast between the markings on the ground and the road surface.

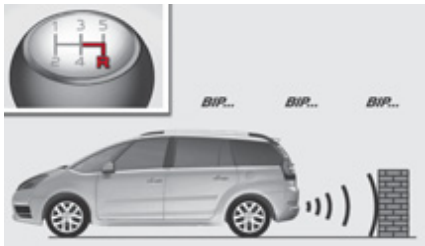
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

PARKING SENSORS

This system indicates the proximity of an obstacle (person, vehicle, tree, gate, etc.) which comes within the field of detection of sensors located in the bumper.

Certain types of obstacle (stake, roadworks cone, etc.) detected initially will no longer be detected at the end of the manoeuvre due to the presence of blind spots.

Rear parking sensors



The system is switched on by engaging reverse gear. This is accompanied by an audible signal.

The system is switched off when you exit reverse gear.

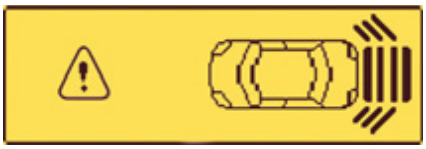
Audible assistance

The proximity information is given by an intermittent audible signal, the frequency of which increases as the vehicle approaches the obstacle.

The sound emitted by the speaker (right or left) indicates the side on which the obstacle is located.

When the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle becomes less than approximately thirty centimetres, the audible signal becomes continuous.

This function cannot, in any circumstances, take the place of the vigilance and responsibility of the driver.



Visual assistance

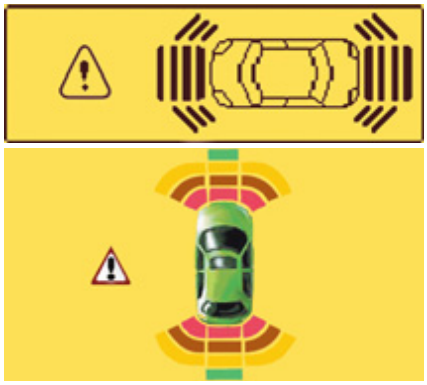
This supplements the audible signal by displaying bars in the multifunction screen which move progressively nearer to the vehicle. When the obstacle is near, the "Danger" symbol is also displayed in the screen.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Front parking sensors

In addition to the rear parking sensors, the front parking sensors are triggered when an obstacle is detected in front and the speed of the vehicle is still below 6 mph (10 km/h).

The front parking sensors are interrupted if the vehicle stops for more than three seconds in forward gear, if no further obstacles are detected or when the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).



The sound emitted by the speaker (front or rear) indicates whether the obstacle is in front or behind.

Deactivation/Activation of the front and rear parking sensors

The function is deactivated by pressing this button. The indicator lamp in the button comes on.

Pressing this button again reactivates the function. The indicator lamp in the button goes off.

The function will be deactivated automatically if a trailer is being towed or a bicycle carrier is fitted (vehicle fitted with a towbar or bicycle carrier recommended by CITROËN).

Operating fault

In the event of a malfunction of the system, when reverse gear is engaged this warning lamp is displayed in the instrument panel and/or a message appears in the screen, accompanied by an audible signal (short beep).

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

In bad weather or in winter, ensure that the sensors are not covered with mud, ice or snow. When reverse gear is engaged, an audible signal (long beep) indicates that the sensors may be dirty.

When the vehicle is moving at a speed below 6 mph (10 km/h), certain sound sources (motorcycle, lorry, pneumatic drill, etc.) may trigger the audible signals of the parking sensor system.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

PNEUMATIC SUSPENSION

Grand C4 Picasso **C4 Picasso**

The pneumatic rear suspension enhances driving comfort by maintaining a constant body height whatever the vehicle load.

Operation

- If there is an increase in vehicle load, a sinking of the rear of the vehicle is detected and the pneumatic springs inflate in order to compensate for the extra weight.
- If there is a decrease in load, a rising of the rear of the vehicle is detected and so the pneumatic springs deflate to return the vehicle to its nominal height.
- If the vehicle has been unused for a long period, the pneumatic springs may inflate if necessary when you unlock or open a door, so as to return the vehicle to its nominal height.

If you do not reactivate the system manually, automatic height correction will be activated as soon as the vehicle starts to move. During height correction, the service warning lamp comes on and a message on the screen reminds you not to exceed 6 mph (10 km/h).

The automatic correction does not function if the doors or the boot are open.

The automatic correction operates even if your vehicle is in power economy mode.

Activation/Deactivation

The automatic height correction can be deactivated:

☞ press button **B** located on the left hand boot interior trim for approximately two seconds,

☞ release the button when you hear a beep. Deactivation is confirmed by the lighting of the indicator lamp in button **B**.

You must deactivate the system in the following circumstances:

- when working under the vehicle,
- when changing a wheel,
- when transporting the vehicle on a lorry or ferry.

To reactivate automatic height correction:

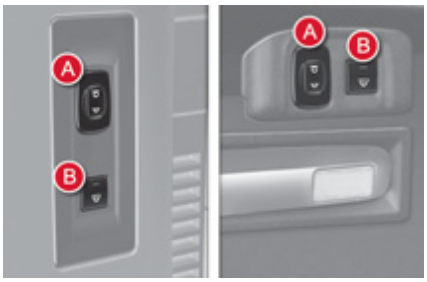
☞ press button **B** again for approximately two seconds,

☞ release the button when you hear a beep. Activation is confirmed by the extinction of the indicator lamp in button **B**.

In the event of a system fault, alert messages, always in association with the service warning lamp, will appear in the instrument panel. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Loading/unloading assistance



Grand C4 Picasso **C4 Picasso**

The pneumatic suspension has an additional function: the possibility to raise or lower the height of the rear of the vehicle when stationary, in order to facilitate loading/unloading of the boot.

Increasing the height of the boot floor

☞ Press continuously the top control **A**, which is located in the boot, on the left-hand side.

This action will be accompanied by an audible signal. You can stop the movement at any time by releasing the control.

3 beeps will confirm that the movement has gone as far as it can.

Returning to the normal height

☞ Press briefly the bottom of control **A** twice.

Decreasing the height of the boot floor

☞ Press continuously the bottom of control **A**.

This action will be accompanied by an audible signal. You can stop the movement at any time by releasing the control.

3 beeps will confirm that the movement has gone as far as it can.

Returning to the normal height

☞ Press briefly the top of control **A** twice.

Particular points

- If you start the vehicle without having returned it to the normal height, automatic correction will activate as soon as the vehicle starts to move. During the correction, the service warning lamp comes on and a message on the screen reminds you not to exceed 6 mph (10 km/h).
- Loading assistance does not function in the following circumstances:
  - If button **B** is illuminated,
  - in power economy mode,
- when you first use the function, press control **A** for two seconds to initialise the system. The system will respond normally to subsequent operation of the control.

Driving with the boot in a low position may damage underbody components.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CITROËN

CITROËN prefers TOTAL

TOTAL

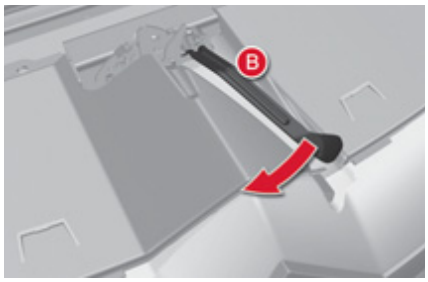
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

BONNET

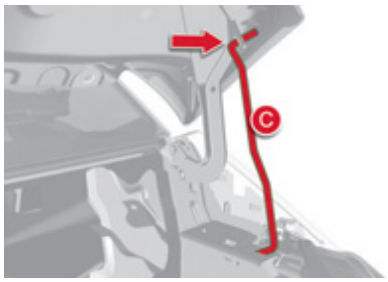
Opening

Before doing anything under the bonnet, switch off the Stop & Start system to avoid any risk of injury resulting from an automatic change to START mode.

- Open the left hand front door.
- Pull the interior release lever **A**, located at the bottom of the door frame.



- At the front of the bonnet, push the exterior safety catch **B** to the left and raise the bonnet.



- Unclip the stay **C** from its housing.
- Fix the stay in the notch to hold the bonnet open.

The location of the interior release lever prevents opening of the bonnet while the left hand door is closed.

This operation must only be carried out when the vehicle is stationary.

Avoid opening the bonnet in strong winds.

When the engine is hot, take care when handling the exterior safety catch and the bonnet stay (risk of burns).

Closing

- Take the stay out of the support notch.
- Clip the stay in its housing.
- Lower the bonnet then slam it closed at the end of its travel.
- Pull on the bonnet to check that it is fully closed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

BLEEDING THE DIESEL FUEL FILTER

Protective cover

Removal

- ☞ Remove the protective cover by unclipping first point **1**, then **3** and **4**.
- ☞ Unclip point **2** pulling towards you, then lift.

Refitting

- ☞ Clip point **2** first.
- ☞ Lower the cover, centring it.
- ☞ Clip points **1** and **4**, pushing vertically and slightly rearwards.
- ☞ Clip point **3**, pushing vertically.

Bleeding water from the fuel filter

Bleed the filter regularly (at every oil change).

To evacuate the water, slacken the bleed screw or the water-in-Diesel sensor, which is located at the base of the filter.

Persist until water ceases to flow out.

Then retighten the bleed screw or the water-in-Diesel sensor.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

RUNNING OUT OF FUEL (DIESEL)

1.6 litre HDi engine

Detach the protective cover for access to the priming pump.

2.0 litre HDi engine

Detach the protective cover for access to the priming pump.

Priming the fuel system

In the event of running out of fuel:

- ☞ after filling (minimum 5 litres), squeeze the manual priming pump repeatedly, until some resistance is felt,
- ☞ then operate the starter, gently pressing the accelerator until the engine starts.

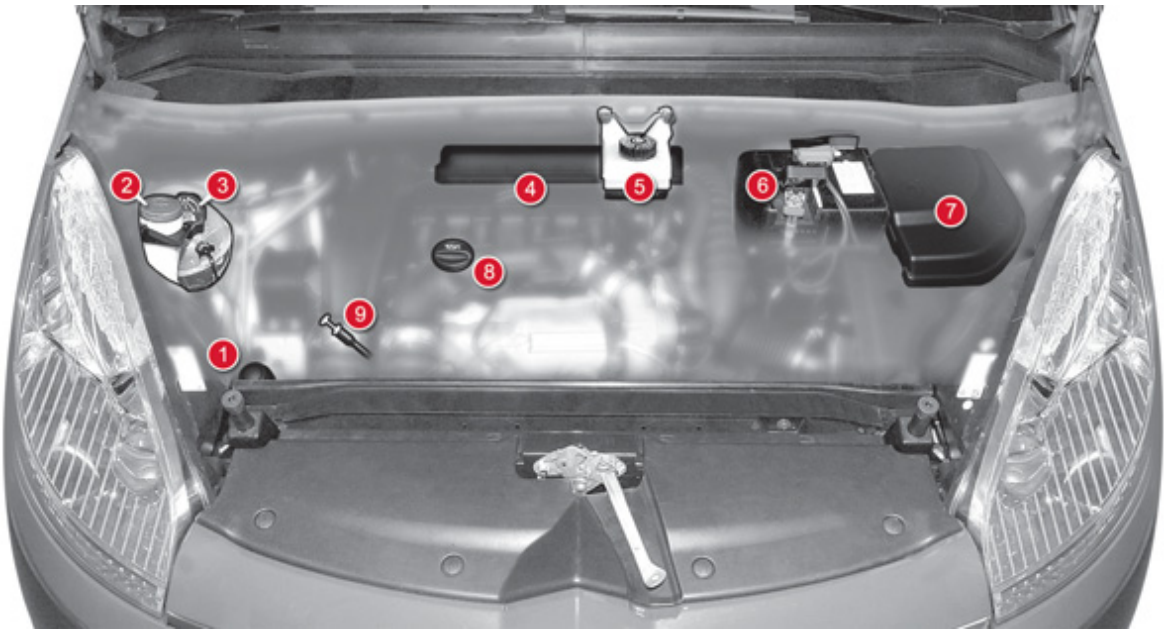
If the engine fails to start at the first attempt, wait 15 seconds before trying again.

If the engine fails to start after a few attempts, repeat the procedure from the beginning. When the engine is idling, accelerate gently to complete the purge of the circuit.

HDi engines are of a highly technical nature.

All maintenance and repairs must be done only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

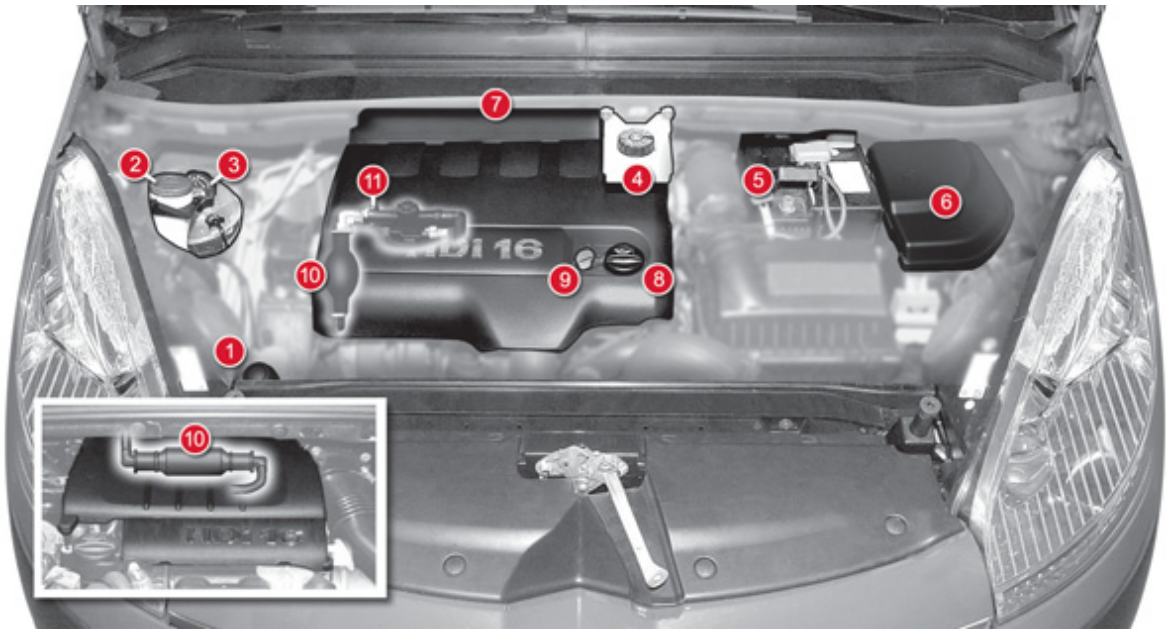


PETROL ENGINES

The covers and caps provide access for checking the levels of the various fluids and for replacing certain components.

1. Power steering fluid reservoir.
2. Screenwash and headlamp wash reservoir.
3. Coolant header tank.
4. Air filter.
5. Brake fluid reservoir.
6. Battery/Fuses.
7. Fusebox.
8. Engine oil filler cap.
9. Engine oil dipstick.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



X

DIESEL ENGINES

The covers and caps provide access for checking the levels of the various fluids, for replacing certain components and for priming the fuel system.

1. Power steering fluid reservoir.
2. Screenwash and headlamp wash reservoir.
3. Coolant header tank
4. Brake fluid reservoir.
5. Battery/Fuses.
6. Fusebox.
7. Air filter.
8. Engine oil filler cap.
9. Engine oil dipstick.
10. Priming pump*.
11. Bleed screw*.

As the Diesel fuel system is pressurised, any work on this system is prohibited.

* According to engine.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CHECKING LEVELS

If a level drops significantly, have the corresponding system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Check all of these levels regularly and top them up if necessary, unless otherwise indicated.

Take care when working under the bonnet, as certain areas of the engine may be extremely hot (risk of burns).

Oil level

The check is carried out either when the ignition is switched on using the oil level indicator on the instrument panel, or using the dipstick.

This manual check will only be correct if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been off for more than 30 minutes.

It is normal to top up the oil level between two services (or oil changes). CITROËN recommends that you check the level, and top up if necessary, every 3 000 miles (5 000 kms).

After topping up the oil, the check when switching on the ignition with the oil level indicator in the instrument panel is not valid during the 30 minutes after topping up.

Engine oil change

Refer to the servicing booklet for details of the interval for this operation.

In order to maintain the reliability of the engine and emission control system, the use of additives in the engine oil is prohibited.

Oil specification

The oil must be the correct grade for your engine and conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Brake fluid level

The brake fluid level should be close to the "MAX" mark. If it is not, check the brake pad wear.

Changing the fluid

Refer to the servicing booklet for details of the interval for this operation.

Fluid specification

The brake fluid must conform to the manufacturer's recommendations and meet the DOT4 standard.

Power steering fluid level

The power steering fluid level should be close to the "MAX" mark. With the engine cold, unscrew the cap to check the level.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Coolant level

The coolant level should be close to the "MAX" mark but should never exceed it.

When the engine is warm, the temperature of the coolant is regulated by the fan. This can operate with the ignition off.

On vehicles which are fitted with a particle emission filter, the fan may operate after the vehicle has been switched off, even if the engine is cold.

In addition, as the cooling system is pressurised, wait at least one hour after switching off the engine before carrying out any work.

To avoid any risk of scalding, unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop. When the pressure has dropped, remove the cap and top up the level.

Changing the coolant

The coolant does not have to be changed.

Fluid specification

The coolant must conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Screenwash and headlamp wash fluid

In the case of vehicles fitted with headlamp washers, the low fluid level is indicated by an audible signal and a message in the screen.

Top up the reservoir when you next stop the vehicle.

Fluid specification

For optimum cleaning and to avoid freezing, this fluid must not be topped up with or replaced with plain water.

Diesel additive level (Diesel engine with particle emission filter)

A low additive level is indicated by illumination of the service warning lamp, accompanied by an audible warning and a message in the multi-function screen.

Topping up

This additive must be topped up by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

Used products

Avoid prolonged contact of used oil or fluids with the skin.

Most of these fluids are harmful to health or indeed very corrosive.

Do not discard used oil or fluids into sewers or onto the ground.

Take used oil to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop (France) or to an authorised waste disposal site.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CHECKS

Unless otherwise indicated, check these components in accordance with the servicing booklet and according to your engine.

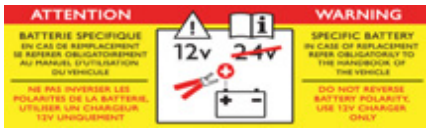
Otherwise, have them checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

12 V battery

The battery does not require any maintenance.

However, check that the terminals are clean and correctly tightened, particularly in summer and winter.

When carrying out work on the battery, refer to the "Practical information" section for details of the precautions to be taken before disconnecting the battery and following its reconnection.



The presence of this label, in particular with the Stop & Start system, indicates the use of a specific 12 V lead-acid battery with special technology and specification, for which the involvement of a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop is required when replacing or disconnecting the battery.

Failure to observe this recommendation may shorten the life of the battery.

Air filter and passenger compartment filter

Refer to the servicing booklet for details of the replacement intervals for these components.

Depending on the environment (e.g. dusty atmosphere) and the use of the vehicle (e.g. city driving), **replace them twice as often if necessary** (refer to the "Engines" section).

A clogged passenger compartment filter may have an adverse effect on the performance of the air conditioning system and generate undesirable odours.

Oil filter

Replace the oil filter each time the engine oil is changed.

Refer to the servicing booklet for details of the replacement interval for this component.

Particle filter system (Diesel)

Complementary to the catalytic converter, this filter makes an active contribution to the preservation of air quality by the retaining of the unburnt pollutant particles. Black exhaust fumes are thus no longer emitted.

After prolonged idling or driving at very low speeds, you may occasionally notice water vapour being emitted from the exhaust when accelerating. This is of no consequence to the running of the vehicle or to the environment.

If there is risk of clogging, a message appears on the multifunction screen, accompanied by an audible signal and lighting of the service warning lamp.

This alert tells you that the particle filter is starting to fill up (in conditions of urban driving of exceptionally long duration: low speeds, traffic jams etc.)

To regenerate the filter, it is advised to drive as soon as possible, when traffic conditions permit, at a speed of 40 mph (around 60 km/h) or more for at least five minutes (until the alert message disappears).

If this alert persists, consult a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Manual gearbox

The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Refer to the servicing booklet for the details of the level checking interval for this component.

6-speed electronic gearbox system

The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Refer to the servicing booklet for details of the checking interval for this component.

Automatic gearbox

The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Refer to the servicing booklet for details of the level checking interval for this component.

Brake pads

Brake wear depends on the style of driving, particularly in the case of vehicles used in town, over short distances. It may be necessary to have the condition of the brakes checked, even between vehicle services.

Unless there is a leak in the circuit, a drop in the brake fluid level indicates that the brake pads are worn.

Brake disc wear

For information on checking brake disc wear, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Electric parking brake

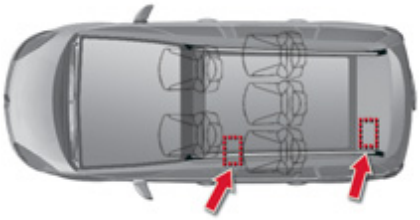
This system does not require any routine servicing. However, in the event of a problem, have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

For more information, see "Driving - Electric parking brake - § Operating faults".

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

TEMPORARY PUNCTURE REPAIR KIT

Complete system consisting of a compressor and a sealant cartridge which permits **temporary repair** of a tyre so that you can drive to the nearest garage.



The kit is located in the boot under the floor or under the flap in the second row left-hand passenger footwell (open by turning the screw a quarter of a turn).

It is designed to repair holes of a maximum diameter of 4 mm, located exclusively on the tyre tread or shoulder. Avoid removing any foreign bodies which have penetrated the tyre.

Using the kit

☞ Tick the wheel to be repaired on the speed limitation sticker enclosed then affix the sticker to the vehicle's steering wheel to remind you that a wheel is in temporary use.

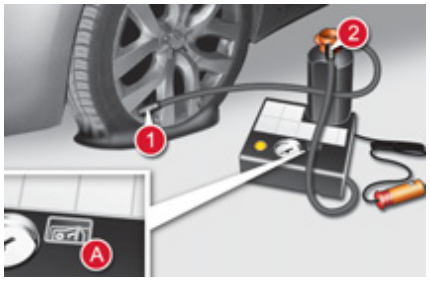
☞ Switch off the ignition.

☞ Clip the cartridge **1** on the compressor **2**.

☞ Check that the switch **A** is tilted to position **"0"**.

☞ Connect the pipe of the cartridge **1** to the valve of the tyre to be repaired.

☞ Unwind the pipe of the compressor **2** fully before connecting it to the cartridge.



☞ Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.

☞ Start the vehicle and leave the engine running.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

☞ Switch on the compressor by moving the switch **A** to position **"1"** until the tyre pressure reaches 2.0 bars.

If this pressure has not been reached after approximately three minutes, the tyre cannot be repaired; contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

☞ Remove the compressor and store the cartridge in the plastic bag, supplied in the kit, to avoid staining your vehicle with traces of fluid.

☞ Drive immediately for approximately two miles (three kilometres), at reduced speed (between 15 and 35 mph - 20 and 60 km/h), to plug the puncture.

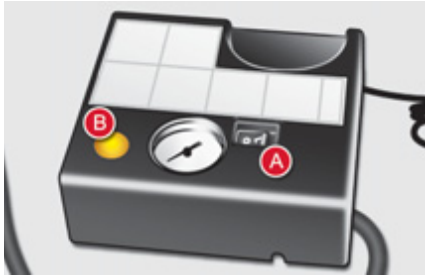
☞ Stop to check the repair and the pressure.

☞ Connect the compressor pipe directly to the valve of the repaired wheel.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket again.
- Start the vehicle again and leave the engine running.

- Adjust the pressure using the compressor (to inflate: switch **A** in position **"1"**; to deflate: switch **A** in position **"0"** and press button **B**), in accordance with the vehicle's tyre pressure label (located on the door aperture on the driver's side), then remember to check that the leak is plugged correctly (no further loss of pressure after several miles).
- Remove the compressor, then store the whole kit.
- Drive at reduced speed (50 mph [80 km/h]).
- Visit a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible to have the tyre repaired or replaced by a technician.



Take care, the sealant cartridge contains ethylene-glycol. This product is harmful if swallowed and causes irritation to the eyes. Keep it out of reach of children.

The expiry date of the sealant is indicated on the base of the cartridge.

The cartridge is designed for a single use; even if only partly used, it must be replaced.

After use, do not discard the cartridge into the environment, take it to a CITROËN dealer or to an authorised waste disposal site.

Do not forget to obtain a new sealant cartridge, available from a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Under-inflation detection

If the vehicle is fitted with tyre under-inflation detection, the tyre under-inflation warning lamp will remain on after the wheel has been repaired until the system is reinitialised by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CHANGING A WHEEL

Access to the tools

Depending on equipment, the tools are to be found either in the compartment under the second-row passenger footwells (the compartment is opened by turning the screw a quarter turn) or in the well under the third-row left-hand seat.

1. Tool for removing the central trim on alloy wheels*
   or
2. Tool for removing the chrome covers on the wheel bolts on alloy wheels*
3. Centring guide*
4. Wheelbrace
5. Vehicle jack with integral handle
6. Security bolt socket (located in the glovebox)**
7. Short extension for C4 Picasso
8. Long extension for Grand C4 Picasso (located in the well under the right hand third row seat)
9. Two chocks, provided for changing a wheel or for other uses on the vehicle (such as releasing the electric parking brake)
10. Parking brake release tool (electric parking brake)
11. Removable towing eye

* With alloy wheels only.

** With security bolts only.

Switch on your hazard warning lamps, ensure that any passengers leave the vehicle and find a safe place to wait away from traffic (e.g. behind crash barriers or on a grass verge).

Never get underneath the vehicle if it is supported only by the jack; use a stand.

The jack and the tools are specific to your vehicle. Do not use for any other purpose.

Do not to exceed a speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) on your spare wheel.

Have the original wheel repaired and refitted as soon as possible.

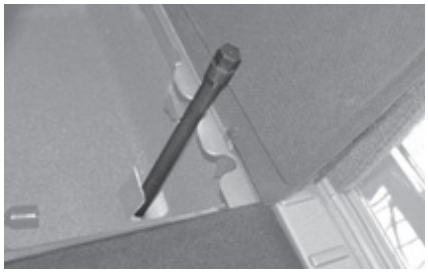
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Access to the spare wheel

C4 Picasso

Taking out the wheel (C4 Picasso)

- ☞ Lift the boot floor covering to reveal the spare wheel carrier drive on the left.
- ☞ Take the extension **7** from the set of tools.
- ☞ Lift up the spare wheel carrier drive aperture cap, if fitted.
- ☞ Fit the extension to the drive then engage the head of the wheel-brace **4** on the extension.
- ☞ Turn the assembly **clockwise** to the end of its travel to lower the spare wheel carrier; the spare wheel is now resting on the ground.
- ☞ Pull the wheel towards you and pass the linking plate through the centre of the wheel.



Grand C4 Picasso

Taking out the wheel (Grand C4 Picasso)

- ☞ Lift the boot floor covering to reveal the spare wheel carrier drive on the right.
- ☞ Take the extension **8** clipped in the rear of the well below the right hand third-row seat.
- ☞ Lift up the spare wheel carrier drive aperture cap.
- ☞ Fit the extension to the drive then engage the head of the wheel-brace **4** on the extension.
- ☞ Turn the assembly **clockwise** to the end of its travel to lower the spare wheel carrier; the spare wheel is now resting on the ground.
- ☞ Pull the wheel towards you and pass the linking plate through the centre of the wheel.

Putting the wheel back in place

- ☞ The tyre valve must be facing upwards.
- ☞ Pass the linking plate through the centre of the wheel (first removing the central trim on certain alloy wheels).
- ☞ Turn the carrier drive **anti-clockwise** to draw in the carrier cable. Initially the drive will turn freely, then the cable will tighten to raise the wheel.

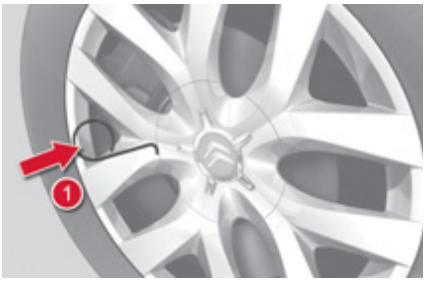
  Check that the wheel is tight against the vehicle floor and not interfering with other nearby components (e.g. the exhaust).
- ☞ Stow the tools.

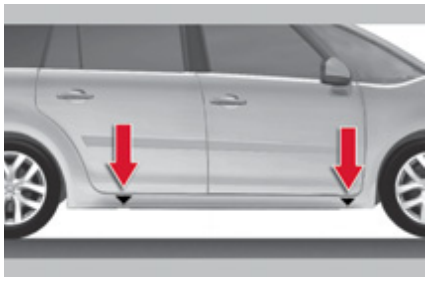
With the damaged wheel now under the vehicle floor, the vehicle has reduced ground clearance, so take extra care when reversing or driving on uneven surfaces, including kerbs.

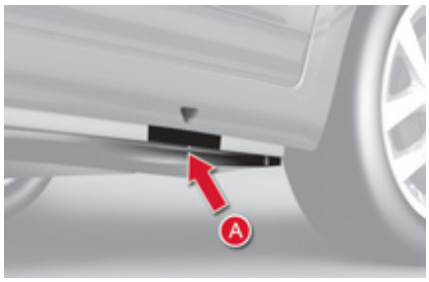
Retrieval of the spare wheel and stowage of the affected road wheel are operations that should be done with the vehicle standing on its wheels, not supported by the jack.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Removing a wheel







- Park the vehicle on level, stable and non-slippery ground. Apply the parking brake (a message and a warning lamp appear on the instrument panel).

  Switch off the ignition and engage first gear or reverse gear depending on the slope (position **P** if an automatic gearbox, **D** or **R** if a 6-speed electronic gearbox).
- Use a chock to secure the vehicle more safely. Place the chock **9** in front of the wheel that is opposite the wheel affected.

Before any operation of this sort, it is advisable to deactivate your pneumatic suspension.

- Detach the trim using the removing tool **4**, pulling in the area of the valve.

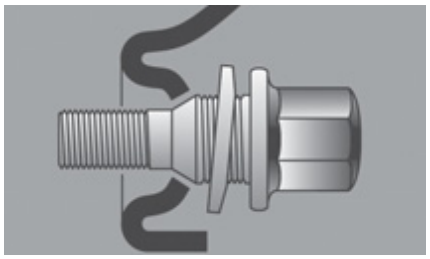
  For vehicles with alloy wheels, insert the trim removing tool **1** into the recess in the central trim and lever it off.

  For vehicles with alloy wheels that have visible bolts, remove the chrome covers using the removing tool **2**.

- Slacken the wheel bolts. For vehicles with alloy wheels, undo the security bolts using the security socket **6**.
- Position the jack under the vehicle, at the jacking point **A** closest to the wheel to be changed.
- Unwind the jack **5** until its bracket is in contact with the ground. Make sure that the jack is vertical under the jacking point used.
- Continue to extend the jack so as to raise the vehicle.
- Undo the wheel bolts and remove the wheel.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Temporary use spare wheel



If your vehicle is equipped with a spare wheel for temporary use only, when fitting this it is normal to observe that the wheel bolts do not come to bear directly on the wheel rim.

The spare wheel is secured by the conical tapering of the wheel bolt's shaft.

When refitting the original wheel, ensure that the wheel bolts and washers are clean and in good condition.

Fitting a wheel

- ☞ Position the wheel with the aid of the centring guide **3**.
- ☞ Do up the 3 bolts by hand, then remove the centring guide **3**. Position the 4th bolt.
- ☞ Pre-tighten the wheel bolts, using the wheelbrace **4**.
- ☞ Retract the jack **5** and disengage it.
- ☞ Tighten the wheel bolts, using the wheelbrace **4**.
- ☞ Ensure that the tyre pressure is correct.

Under-inflation detection

Wheels with under-inflation detection have tyre pressure sensors. Have repairs to them carried out by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. The spare wheel does not have a sensor.

Security bolts (alloy wheels)

Each wheel may be equipped with one security bolt (depending on the country of sale).

To remove it:

- ☞ remove its protective cover using of the tool for removing the chrome covers **2**.
- ☞ use the security bolt socket **6** with the wheelbrace **4**.

Spare wheel dimensions

If your spare wheel has dimensions different from those of the standard vehicle wheels (identified by a label), it is imperative to use the spare wheel only temporarily, to drive with caution, not to exceed 50 mph (80 km/h) and to have the tyre repaired and the standard wheel refitted as soon as possible.

Tyre pressures

These are indicated on the label on the front left-hand door pillar (see "Technical Data - Identification markings").

The wheel bolts are specific to each type of wheel.

If new wheels are fitted, check with your CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop that the wheel bolts are compatible with the new wheels.

Make a note of the code number on the head of the security bolt socket. This will enable you to obtain a replacement security bolt socket from your dealer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CHANGING A BULB

The headlamps are fitted with polycarbonate glass with a protective coating:

- **do not clean them using a dry or abrasive cloth, nor with a detergent or solvent product,**
- use a sponge and soapy water,
- when using a high pressure washer on persistent marks, do not keep the lance directed towards the lamps or their edges for too long, so as not to damage their protective coating and seals.

- Do not touch the bulb directly with your fingers, use lint-free cloths.

Changing a bulb should only be done after the headlamp has been switched off for a few minutes (risk of serious burns).

It is imperative to use only anti-ultraviolet (UV) type bulbs in order not to damage the headlamp.

Always replace a failed bulb with a new bulb with the same type and specification.

Front lamps

Model with halogen headlamps

1. **Dipped beam headlamps (H7-55 W)**
2. **Main beam headlamps (H1-55 W)**
3. **Sidelamps (H6W-6 W)**
   Daytime running lamps/ sidelamps (LEDs)
4. **Direction indicators (H21-21 W)**

Model with Xenon headlamps and directional headlamps

1. **Dual-function Xenon headlamps (dipped/main beam)**
2. **Additional main beams (H7-55W)**
3. **Sidelamps (H6W-6W)**
   Daytime running lamps/ sidelamps (LEDs)
4. **Direction indicators (H21-21W)**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Dual-function Xenon headlamps (dipped/main beam)

If the headlamp bears this symbol, any operation to change the Xenon dual-function directional headlamp (D1S-35 W) must be carried out by professionals (risk of electrocution).

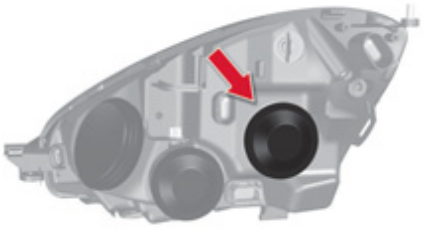
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

It is recommended to change both bulbs at the same time if one of them is faulty.

Additional main beam headlamps

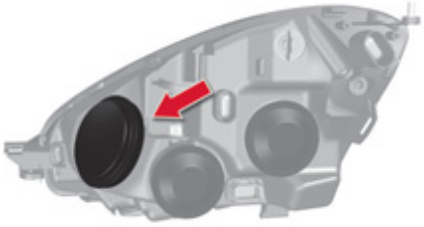
- ☞ Remove the rubber cover.
- ☞ Rotate the bulb-holder a quarter turn anti-clockwise and remove it from its housing.
- ☞ Replace the faulty bulb.
- ☞ Reposition the bulb-holder by pushing it in, tightening it by a quarter turn clockwise.
- ☞ Refit the rubber cover.

Dipped beam headlamps



- ☞ Remove the rubber cover.
- ☞ Rotate the bulb-holder a quarter turn anti-clockwise and remove it from its housing.
- ☞ Replace the faulty bulb.
- ☞ Reposition the bulb-holder by pushing it in, tightening it by a quarter turn clockwise.
- ☞ Refit the rubber cover.

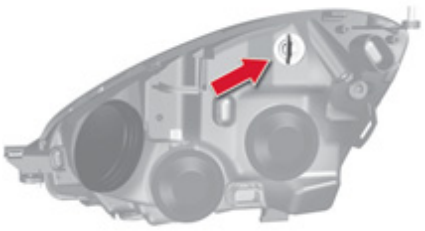
Main beam headlamps



- ☞ Remove the rubber cover.
- ☞ Detach the clips by lowering them on each side of the bulb.
- ☞ Pull on the bulb-holder to remove it.
- ☞ Replace the faulty bulb.
- ☞ Push the bulb-holder back into its housing.
- ☞ Reattach the clips.
- ☞ Refit the rubber cover.

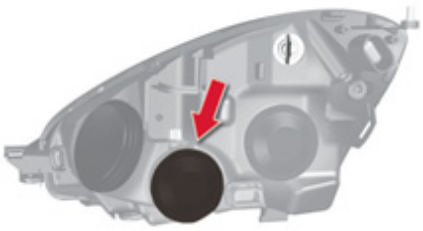
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Sidelamps



- Rotate the bulb-holder a quarter turn anti-clockwise.
- Remove it from its housing.
- Replace the faulty bulb.
- Reposition the bulb-holder.
- Rotate it a quarter turn clockwise to reposition in its housing.

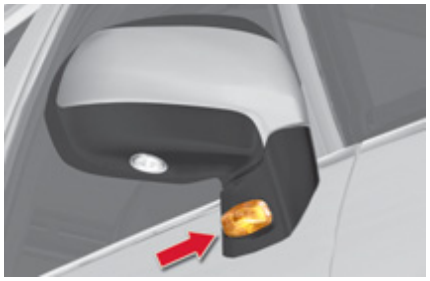
Direction indicators



The direction indicator bulb is located underneath the main beam bulb.

- Remove the rubber cover.
- Pull on the bulb-holder to remove it.
- Replace the faulty bulb.
- Reposition the bulb-holder in the bracket and push it in.
- Refit the rubber cover.

Integrated direction indicator side repeaters



To change the repeater, press downwards firmly on the zone indicated by the arrow, then pull the repeater.

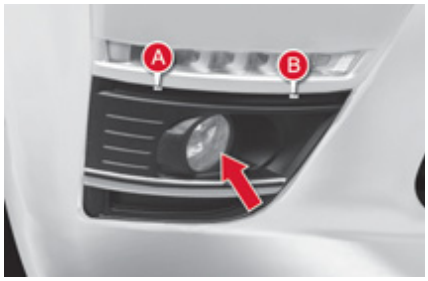
Repeaters can be obtained from a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Changing daytime running lamps/sidelamps (LEDs)

For the replacement of this type of LED lamp, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Front foglamps (H11-55 W)



- Insert the key in the notch **A**, tilting the bulb-holder cover, located underneath the bumper, then insert the key in the notch **B** to remove it.
- Undo the lamp.
- Tilt the bulb-holder.
- Change the faulty bulb.
- Reposition the bulb-holder.
- Do up the lamp and refit the bulb-holder cover firmly in place.

Rear foglamp (P21 W)

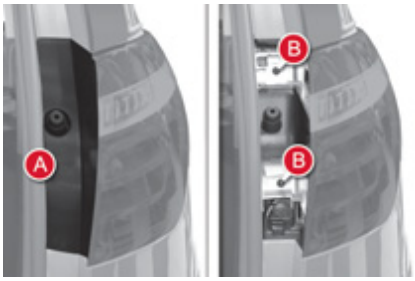
- Pass your hand underneath the bumper to reach the bulb-holder.
- Rotate the bulb-holder a quarter turn.
- Pull on the bulb-holder.
- Rotate the bulb a quarter turn to remove it.
- Replace the faulty bulb.
- Fit the bulb.
- Reposition the bulb-holder by rotating it a quarter turn.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Rear lamps (C4 Picasso)

1. **Direction indicators (PY21W)**
2. **Brake lamps/sidelamps (P21/5W)**
3. **Reversing lamp (P21W)**

Lamps mounted on the bodywork



- Identify the faulty bulb.
- With the boot open, press on the plastic cover **A**, located close to the lamp unit, to release it from its housing.
- Undo the two screws **B** on the side of the lamp unit and detach the lamp unit by pulling it rearwards.
- Disconnect the connector linking the lamp unit with the tailgate.
- Remove the bulb-holder.
- Replace the bulbs.

  To remove a bulb, rotate it a quarter turn.

  To refit the bulb, rotate it a quarter turn in the other direction.
- Reposition the bulb-holder.
- Reconnect the connector to the lamp unit.
- Refit the lamp unit on the body and do up the two screws.
- Reposition the plastic cover by pressing on it.

Lamps mounted on the tailgate

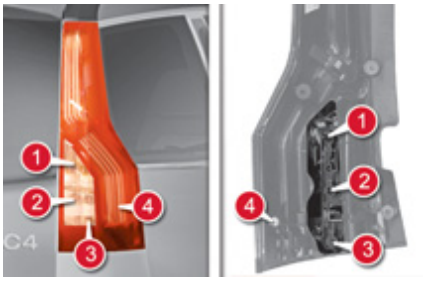
- Identify the faulty bulb.
- With the boot open, remove the plastic cover on the tailgate.
- Remove the bulb-holder from its housing.
- Replace the bulb.

  To remove a bulb, rotate it a quarter turn.

  To refit the bulb, rotate it a quarter turn in the other direction.
- Reposition the bulb-holder.
- Refit the plastic cover.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Rear lamps (Grand C4 Picasso)



1. **Direction indicators (PY21W)**
2. **Brake lamps (P21W)**
3. **Reversing lamp (P21W)**
4. **Sidelamps (LEDs)**
   For this type of lamp, contact a CITROËN dealer or qualified workshop.

Changing bulbs

- ☞ Identify the faulty bulb.
- ☞ With the tailgate open, undo the 3 screws located on the side of the lamp unit and pull it rearwards to detach.
- ☞ Disconnect the connector linking the lamp unit to the boot. Do not disconnect the LEDs.
- ☞ Remove the seal.
- ☞ Remove the bulb-holder.
- ☞ Replace the bulbs.
  To remove a bulb, rotate it a quarter turn.
  To fit the bulb, rotate it a quarter turn in the other direction.
- ☞ Reposition the bulb-holder.
- ☞ Refit the seal.
- ☞ Reconnect the connector to the lamp unit.
- ☞ Arrange the harness in the opening provided in the body.
- ☞ Refit the lamp unit to the body and fit and tighten the 3 screws.

Number plate lamps (W 5 W)

- ☞ Insert a thin screwdriver into one of the external holes of the lens.
- ☞ Push it outwards to unclip it.
- ☞ Remove the lens.
- ☞ Change the faulty bulb.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Third brake lamp with bulb (W5W)

- ☞ With the boot open, detach the interior trim.
- ☞ Undo the nuts.
- ☞ Using a thin screwdriver, detach the 3 retaining lugs.
- ☞ Remove the lamp via the exterior of the tailgate.
- ☞ Remove the bulb-holder.
- ☞ Change the faulty bulb(s).

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

Third brake lamp (LEDs)

For the replacement of this type of LED lamp, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Interior lighting

Interior lamp (1/W5W)

Detach the cover of the interior lamp **1** with a thin screwdriver, close to the button, to access the faulty bulb.

Map reading lamps (2/W5W)

Detach the cover of the interior lamp. To access the faulty bulb, detach the partition for the reading lamp **2** concerned, as necessary.

Boot lamps (W5W)

Detach the unit by pushing it rearwards.

Torch (Krypton 3.6 V)

- ☞ Open the tab.
- ☞ Push with a flat screwdriver in the hole under the tab and recover the bulb unit.
- ☞ Open the bulb unit fully to change the bulb.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CHANGING A FUSE

Before replacing a fuse:
- the cause of the failure must be identified and corrected,
- all electrical consumers must be switched off,
- your vehicle must be stationary, ignition off.

Identify the failed fuse by reference to the tables and diagrams below.

Access to tools

The extraction tweezer **A** is fitted on the back of the dashboard fusebox cover.

For access to it:
- ☞ unclip the cover by pulling at the top right, then left,
- ☞ pull the cover down,
- ☞ remove the tweezer.

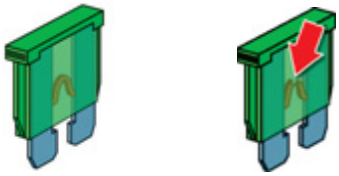
Changing a fuse

- ☞ Use the special tweezer **A** to extract the fuse from its housing and check the condition of its element.
- ☞ Replace the failed fuse with a fuse of the **same rating (same colour)**

  Use of a fuse of different rating may cause a malfunction (risk of fire).

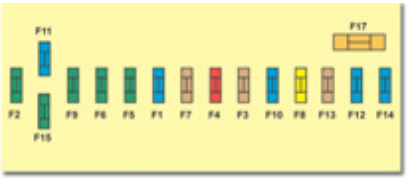
If the failure occurs again soon after replacing the fuse, have the electrical system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Good **Failed**



Tweezer A

Fuses under the dashboard



Your vehicle's electrical system is designed to operate with either standard or optional equipment.

Before installing electrical equipment or accessories on your vehicle, consult a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

CITROËN declines all responsibility for the consequences and costs that are caused by faults or repairs on your vehicle resulting from the installation of accessories that are not supplied and/or not recommended by CITROËN and not installed according to its instructions, particularly when the energy consumption of all of the additional accessories connected exceeds 10 milliamperes (Ma).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fuses under the dashboard

Access to the fuses

☞ Undo the screw by a quarter turn and pivot the housing.

Table of fuses

Fuse N°	Rating	Functions
F1	15 A	Rear screen wipe
F2	30 A	Locking and unlocking earth
F3	5 A	Airbags and pretensioners
F4	10 A	Multimedia, photochromatic rear view mirror, particle filter, diagnostic socket, air conditioning, manual headlamp height adjustment
F5	30 A	Front windows, front door electronic control panel, panoramic sunroof
F6	30 A	Rear windows
F7	5 A	Interior lamps, cooled glovebox, radio
F8	20 A	Multifunction screen, radio, steering mounted controls, multimedia, under inflation detection, alarm, trailer
F9	30 A	Multimedia, front 12 V sockets, torch, radio
F10	15 A	Height corrector (suspension)
F11	15 A	Brake switch, ignition switch
F12	15 A	Parking sensors, automatic wipers and lighting, passenger's electric seat, lane departure warning system, Hi-Fi amplifier, trailer
F13	5 A	Engine relay unit (BSM), driver's electric seat
F14	15 A	Air conditioning, Bluetooth® hands-free system, automatic gearbox selector lever, airbags, instrument panel
F15	30 A	Locking and unlocking
F16	-	SHUNT
F17	40 A	Heated rear screen

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Access to the second dashboard fusebox

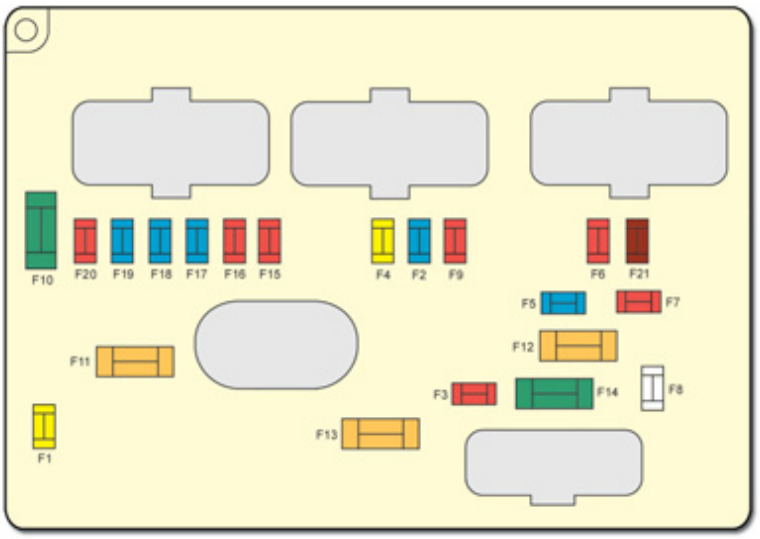
After any operation on the fuses in the fusebox, check that the fusebox cover is refitted correctly for their protection.

Table of fuses

Fuse N°	Rating	Functions
F29	**20 A**	Heated seats
F30	**-**	Not used
F31	**40 A**	Trailer relay unit
F32	**15 A**	Rear 12 V socket
F33	**5 A**	Parking sensors, automatic wipers and lighting, passenger's electric seat, lane departure warning system, Hi-Fi amplifier
F34	**5 A**	Trailer
F35	**-**	Not used
F36	**20 A**	Hi-Fi amplifier
F37	**10 A**	Air conditioning, lighting pack
F38	**30 A**	Driver's electric seat
F39	**5 A**	Fuel filler flap
F40	**30 A**	Passenger's electric seat, panoramic sunroof

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fuses in the engine compartment



Access to the fuses

☞ Detach and remove the cover.

After any operation, carefully refit the cover. If the cover is not correctly positioned or not properly closed, this could cause serious problems on your vehicle. For the same reason, take care not to spill any liquid in the fusebox.

All work on the maxi-fuses, which are located in these fuseboxes and which give extra protection, must be carried out by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

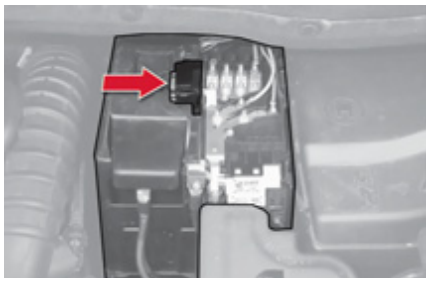
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Table of fuses

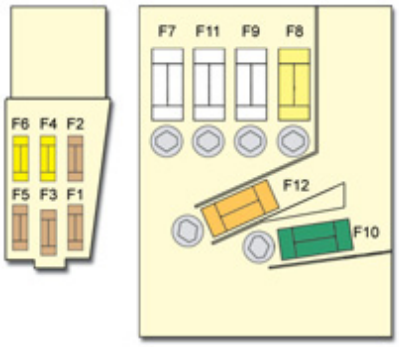
Fuse N°	Rating	Functions
F1	20 A	Engine management
F2	15 A	Horn
F3	10 A	Screenwash pump
F4	20 A	Headlamp wash pump
F5	15 A	Engine components
F6	10 A	Xenon dual-function directional headlamps, automatic headlamp height adjustment, clutch switch, protection switch box (BCP)
F7	10 A	Automatic gearbox, engine coolant level switch, power steering
F8	25 A	Starter motor
F9	10 A	Stop lamp switch
F10	30 A	Engine components
F11	40 A	Rear blower
F12	30 A	Screen wipe
F13	40 A	Built-in Systems Interface (BSI)
F14	30 A	Air pump, heat exchange saver
F15	10 A	Right-hand main beam
F16	10 A	Left-hand main beam
F17	15 A	Left-hand dipped beam
F18	15 A	Right-hand dipped beam
F19	15 A	Engine components
F20	10 A	Engine components
F21	5 A	Cooling fan relay

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fuses on the battery



After any operation, carefully refit the cover. If the cover is not correctly positioned or not properly closed, this could cause serious problems on your vehicle. For the same reason, take care not to spill any liquid in the fusebox.



Access to the fuses

☞ Detach and remove the cover.
Fuses **F1** to **F6** are located on the small board, clipped vertically on the battery fusebox.

Fuses **F7** to **F12** are midi-fuses. All work on these fuses must be carried out by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

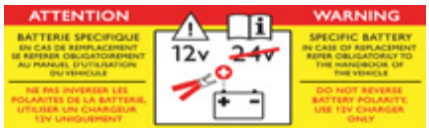
Table of fuses

Fuse N°	Rating	Functions
F1	5 A	Automatic gearbox actuator
F2	5 A	Stop switch
F3	5 A	Battery charge estimation ECU
F4	20 A	ESP supply
F5	5 A	ESP supply
F6	20 A	ECU for 6-speed electronic gearbox/automatic gearbox

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

12 V BATTERY

Procedure for starting the engine using another battery or for charging your flat battery.



The presence of this label, in particular with the Stop & Start system, indicates the use of a 12 V lead-acid battery with special technology and specification; the involvement of a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop is essential when replacing or disconnecting the battery.

After refitting the battery, the Stop & Start system will only be active after a continuous period of immobilisation of the vehicle, a period which depends on the climatic conditions and the state of charge of the battery (up to about 8 hours).

The Stop & Start battery does not have to be disconnected for charging.

Access to the battery

The battery is located under the bonnet.

For access to the (+) terminal:

- ☞ Release the bonnet using the interior lever, then the exterior safety catch,
- ☞ raise the bonnet and secure it with its stay,
- ☞ lift the plastic cover for access to the (+) terminal.

Before doing any work

Immobilise the vehicle: apply the parking brake, put the gearbox in neutral*, then switch off the ignition.

Check that all electrical equipment is switched off.

Check that the battery posts and terminals are clean. If they are covered with sulphate (white or green deposit), disconnect them and clean them.

Batteries contain harmful substances such as sulphuric acid and lead. They must be disposed of in accordance with regulations and must not, in any circumstances, be discarded with household waste.

Take used cell batteries and vehicle batteries to an authorised collection point.

* or position **P** for an automatic gearbox.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

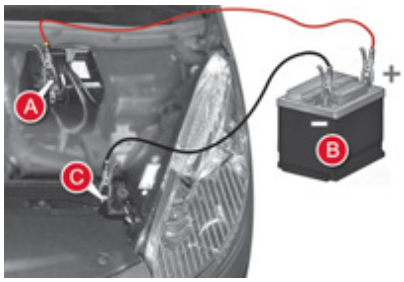
Starting using another battery

If the battery in your vehicle is flat, the engine can be started using a slave battery (external or in another vehicle) and jump leads.

First ensure that the slave battery has a nominal voltage of 12 V and a capacity at least equal to that of the flat battery.

Do not try to start the engine by connecting a battery charger.

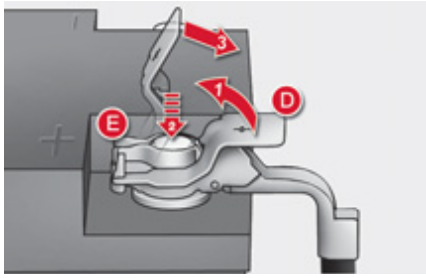
Do not disconnect the (+) terminal when the engine is running.



- Connect the red lead to the (+) terminal of the flat battery **A**, then to the (+) terminal of the slave battery **B**.
- Connect one end of the green or black lead to the (-) terminal of the slave battery **B** (or the earth point on the slave vehicle).
- Connect the other end to the earth point **C** on the broken-down vehicle.
- Start the engine on the slave vehicle and leave the engine running for a few minutes.
- Operate the starter on the broken-down vehicle and leave the engine running.

  If the engine does not start straight away, switch off the ignition and wait a few moments before trying again.
- With the engine idling, disconnect the jump leads in reverse order.

Disconnecting the (+) terminal



- Raise the lever **D** fully to release the clamp **E**.

Reconnecting the (+) terminal

- Position the open clamp **E** of the cable on the positive post (+) of the battery.
- Press down on the clamp to position it correctly on the battery post.
- Lock the clamp by lowering the lever **D**.

Do not force the lever as locking will not be possible if the clamp is not positioned correctly; start the procedure again.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Charging the battery using a battery charger

If the battery of your vehicle is flat or prior to taking the vehicle out of service for an extended period, you can charge the battery using a battery charger.

For information on the specification of battery chargers compatible with your battery, refer to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Before disconnecting

- ☞ Go to the battery.
- ☞ Check that all of the openings - doors, boot... - are closed but not locked.
- ☞ Wait at least four minutes after switching off the ignition.

It is recommended that the battery be disconnected if the vehicle is not be used for more than a month.

Charging

- ☞ Disconnect the (+) terminal.
- ☞ Follow the instructions on use provided by the manufacturer of the charger.
- ☞ Connect the red cable of the charger to the (+) post of the battery, then the black cable to the (-) terminal.
- ☞ Once charging is complete, disconnect the charger cables in reverse order.

The charging operation must be carried out in a well ventilated area and well away from naked flames and sources of sparks, so as to avoid any risk of explosion and fire.

Do not try to charge a frozen battery; the battery must first be thawed out to avoid any risk of explosion. If the battery has frozen, before charging, have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, who will ensure that the internal components have not been damaged and that the casing is not cracked, which would introduce the risk of a leak of toxic and corrosive acid.

Reinitialisation after reconnection

After any reconnection of the battery, switch on the ignition and wait at least one minute before starting, to allow time for the initialisation of the electronic systems.

By referring to the corresponding sections, you should set or initialise the following systems yourself:

- the date and time,
- the anti-pinch on the driver's electric window and the sunroof.
- the panoramic sunroof blind,
- the multifunction screen settings,
- the audio system or navigation system settings,

Check that there no error message or warning lamp comes on after switching on the ignition.

However, if minor problems persist after carrying out these operations, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ENERGY ECONOMY MODE

System which manages the duration of use of certain functions to conserve a sufficient level of charge in the battery.

After the engine has stopped, you can still use functions such as the audio and telematics system, windscreen wipers, dipped beam headlamps, courtesy lamps, etc. for a maximum combined duration of thirty minutes.

This period may be reduced considerably if the battery is not fully charged.

Switching to economy mode

Once this period has elapsed, a message appears on the multi-function screen indicating that the vehicle has switched to economy mode and the active functions are put on standby.

If a telephone call is being made at this time:

- it will be maintained for 10 minutes with your Audio system or MyWay hands-free system
- it will be maintained for 10 minutes with the NaviDrive, then it will transfer to your telephone depending on its model.

Exiting economy mode

These functions are reactivated automatically next time the vehicle is started.

To resume the use of these functions immediately, start the engine and let it run for at least 5 minutes.

A flat battery prevents the engine from starting (refer to the corresponding paragraph).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

TOWING THE VEHICLE

Procedure for having your vehicle towed or for towing another vehicle using a removable towing eye.

Access to the tools

According to equipment, the towing eye is installed in the storage flap under the second row passenger footwell or under the boot floor.

To gain access to it:

- ☞ open one of the rear doors or the boot (according to equipment),
- ☞ open the flap or raise the floor (according to equipment),
- ☞ remove the towing eye from the holder.

Towing your vehicle

- ☞ On the front bumper, unclip the cover by pressing at the top left and pulling at the right.
- ☞ Screw the towing eye in fully.
- ☞ Install the towing bar.
- ☞ Switch on the hazard warning lamps on the towed vehicle.
- ☞ Place the gear lever in neutral (position **N** on the electronic gearbox or automatic gearbox).

Failure to observe this instruction could result in damage to certain braking components and the absence of braking assistance the next time the engine is started.

Towing another vehicle

- ☞ On the rear bumper, unclip the cover by pressing at the bottom at pulling at the top.
- ☞ Screw the towing eye in fully.
- ☞ Install the towing bar.
- ☞ Switch on the hazard warning lamps on the towed vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

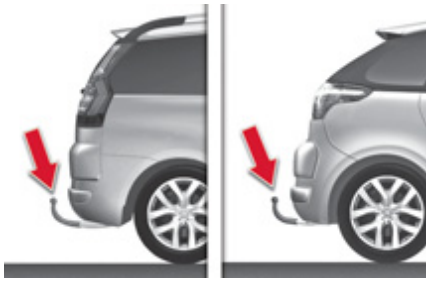
General recommendations

Observe the legislation in force in your country.
Ensure that the weight of the towing vehicle is higher than that of the towed vehicle.
The driver must stay at the wheel of the towed vehicle.
Driving on motorways and fast roads is prohibited when towing.
When towing a vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, always use an approved towing bar; rope and straps are prohibited.
When towing a vehicle with the engine off, there is no longer any power assistance for braking or steering.
In the following cases, you must always call on a professional recovery service:
- vehicle broken down on a motorway or fast road,
- when it is not possible to put the gearbox into neutral, unlock the steering, or release the parking brake,
- towing with only two wheels on the ground,
- where there is no approved towing bar available...

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

TOWING A TRAILER, ...

Towbar suitable for the attachment of a trailer with additional lighting and signalling.



Your vehicle is primarily designed for transporting people and luggage, but it may also be used for towing a trailer.

We recommend the use of genuine CITROËN towbars and their harnesses that have been tested and approved from the design stage of your vehicle, and that the fitting of the towbar is entrusted to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

If the towbar is not fitted by a CITROËN dealer, it is imperative that it is fitted in accordance with the vehicle manufacturer's instructions.

Driving with a trailer places greater demands on the towing vehicle and the driver must take particular care.

Driving advice

Distribution of loads

☞ Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are as close as possible to the axle and the nose weight approaches the maximum permitted without exceeding it.

Air density decreases with altitude, thus reducing engine performance. Above 1 000 metres, the maximum towed load must be reduced by 10 % for every 1 000 metres of altitude.

Refer to the "Technical Data" section for details of the weights and towed loads which apply to your vehicle.

Side wind

☞ Take into account the increased sensitivity to side wind.

Cooling

Towing a trailer on a slope increases the temperature of the coolant.

As the fan is electrically controlled, its cooling capacity is not dependent on the engine speed.

☞ To lower the engine speed, reduce your speed.

The maximum towed load on a long incline depends on the gradient and the ambient temperature.

In all cases, keep a check on the coolant temperature.

☞ If the warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, stop the vehicle and switch off the engine as soon as possible.

Braking

Towing a trailer increases the braking distance.

To avoid overheating of the brakes on a long mountain type of descent, the use of engine braking is recommended.

Tyres

☞ Check the tyre pressures of the towing vehicle and of the trailer, observing the recommended pressures.

Lighting

☞ Check the electrical lighting and signalling on the trailer.

The rear parking sensors will be deactivated automatically if a genuine CITROËN towbar is used.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ROOF BARS

For your safety and to avoid damage to the roof and tailgate, the design of your vehicle requires the use of roof bars and roof boxes that are tested and approved by CITROËN.

Regardless of the type of load carrier to be mounted on the roof (roof box, bicycle carrier, ski carrier...), you must fit transverse roof bars.

Recommendations

- ☞ Distribute the load evenly, avoiding overloading on one side.
- ☞ Arrange the heaviest part of the load as close as possible to the roof.
- ☞ Anchor the load securely and fit a warning flag part of it is overhanging.
- ☞ Drive gently, as the vehicle will be more liable to the effects of side winds (vehicle stability may be altered).
- ☞ Remove the roof bars as soon as they are no longer needed.

Maximum load, distributed over the roof bars (for a loading height not exceeding 40 cm, except bicycle carrier): 80 kg.

If the height exceeds 40 cm, adapt your speed to the profile of the road to avoid damaging the roof bars and the fixings on the roof.

Please refer to national legislation in order to comply with the regulations concerning the transport of objects which are longer than the vehicle.

Bicycle carrier

Do not attach a strap-fitting bicycle carrier to the following vehicle versions:

- C4 Picasso 5-seater (all versions);
- C4 Picasso 7-seater version with opening rear screen.

* According to country.

VERY COLD CLIMATE SCREEN*

Removable protective screen which prevents the accumulation of snow at the radiator cooling fan.

Fitting

- ☞ Offer up the very cold climate screen to the front of the lower section of the front bumper.
- ☞ Press around its edge to engage its fixing clips one by one.

Removal

- ☞ Use a screwdriver as a lever to release each fixing clip in turn.

Do not forget to remove the very cold climate screen:

- when the ambient temperature exceeds 10 °C,
- when towing,
- at speeds above 75 mph (120 km/h).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ACCESSORIES

A wide range of accessories and genuine parts is available from the CITROËN dealer network.

These accessories and parts have been tested and approved for reliability and safety.

They are all adapted to your vehicle and benefit from CITROËN's recommendation and warranty.

"Comfort": front and rear parking sensors, isotherm module, rechargeable torch, sun blinds, air deflector, fragrance cartridges...

"Transport solutions": towbar harness, boot carpet, boot liner, boot spacers, transverse roof bars, bicycle carrier, ski carrier, roof boxes, towbars...

"Style": Alloy wheels, wheel embellishers...

"Protection": anti-theft alarm, wheel security devices, stolen vehicle tracking system, breathalyser, first aid kit, warning triangle, high visibility vest, dog guard, snow chains, anti-skid covers, foglamps kit, temporary puncture repair kit, booster cushions and child seats...

"Protection": mats*, seat covers, mud flaps, sill protectors, bumper protectors, vehicle covers...

* To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:
- ensure that the mat is positioned and secured correctly,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

"Multimedia": Bluetooth® hands-free system, audio systems, portable satellite navigation system, DVD player, USB Box, speakers, 230 V/50 Hz socket, 230 V/12 V power supply adaptor, WiFi on board...

You can also obtain products for cleaning and maintenance (exterior and interior), topping up (screen-wash...) and replacement cartridges (for the temporary puncture repair kit...) from the CITROËN dealer network.

Installation of radio communication transmitters

Before installing any after-market radio communication transmitter, you can contact a CITROËN dealer for the specification of transmitters which can be fitted (frequency, maximum power, aerial position, specific installation requirements), in line with the Vehicle Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive (2004/104/EC).

Depending on the legislation in force in the country, it may be compulsory to have a high visibility safety vest, warning triangle and spare bulbs and fuses available in the vehicle.

The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories which are not recommended by CITROËN may result in a failure of your vehicle's electronic system and excessive electrical consumption.

Please note this precaution. You are advised to contact a CITROËN representative to be shown the range of recommended equipment and accessories.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

TECHNICAL DATA

MODELS:	ENGINES AND GEARBOXES		
Model codes: **UA... UE... UD...**	**5FS-0** **5FS-0/CU1**	**5FV-8/P** **5FV-8/PCU1**	**RFJ-F**
PETROL ENGINES	**VTi 120**	**THP 155**	**VTi 143**
Cubic capacity (cc)	1 598	1 598	1 997
Bore x stroke (mm)	77 x 85.8	77 x 85.8	85 x 88
EU standard maximum power (kW)	88	115	103
Maximum power engine speed (rpm)	6 000	6 000	6 000
EU standard maximum torque (Nm)	160	240	200
Maximum torque engine speed (rpm)	4 250	1 400	4 000
Fuel	Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded
Catalytic converter	Yes	Yes	Yes
GEARBOXES	Manual (5-speed)	Electronic gearbox system (6-speed)	Auto. (4-speed)
OIL CAPACITIES (in litres)			
Engine (with filter replacement)	4.25	-	5

UA...: CITROËN Grand C4 Picasso (7-seat).
UE...: CITROËN Grand C4 Picasso (5-seat).
UD...: CITROËN C4 Picasso (5-seat).
...CU1: commercial versions.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WEIGHTS AND TOWED LOADS (in kg)			
Petrol engines	**VTi 120**	**THP 155**	**VTi 143**
Gearboxes	**Automatic**	**Electronic gearbox system**	**Automatic**
Model codes: UA... UE... UD...	**5FS-0**	**5FV-8/P**	**RFJ-F**
- Unladen weight	1 430 - 1 415 - 1 415	1 517 - 1 430 - 1 430	1 600 - 1 556 - 1 552
- Kerb weight	1 505 - 1 490 - 1 490	1 592 - 1 505 - 1 505	1 675 - 1 631 - 1 627
- Payload	770 - 700 - 525	703 - 630 - 610	660 - 514 - 538
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	2 200 - 2 115 - 2 015	2 220 - 2 060 - 2 040	2 260 - 2 070 - 2 090
- Gross train weight (GTW)			
on a 12 % gradient	3 300 - 3 315 - 3 315	3 420 - 3 410 - 3 390	3 660 - 3 570 - 3 590
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit)			
on a 10 % or 12 % gradient	1 100 - 1 200 - 1 300	1 200 - 1 350 - 1 350	1 400 - 1 500 - 1 500
- Braked trailer* (with load transfer within GTW limit)	1 300 - 1 500 - 1 500	1 500	1 500
- Unbraked trailer	750 -745 - 745	750	750
- Recommended nose weight	60	60	60

* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, on condition that the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by the same amount; warning, towing with a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated apply up to a maximum altitude of 1,000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1,000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 100 km/h (approx. 60 mph) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle in order to protect the engine; when the ambient temperature is higher than 37 °C, limit the weight towed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

TECHNICAL DATA

MODELS:	ENGINES AND GEARBOXES						
Model codes: **UA... UE... UD...**	**9HZ-C** **9HZ-C/ CU1**	**9HZ-H/P** **9HZ-H/ PCU1**	**9HR-8** **9HR-8/ CU1**	**9HR-8/P** **9HR-8/ PCU1**	**9HR-8/PS**	**RHJ-H/P** **RHJ-H/ PCU1**	**RHR-J**
DIESEL ENGINES	**HDi 110**		**HDi 110**			**HDi 138**	
Cubic capacity (cc)	1 560		1 560			1 997	
Bore x stroke (mm)	75 x 88.3		75 x 88.3			85 x 88	
EU standard maximum power (kW)	80		82			100	
Maximum power engine speed (rpm)	4 000		3 600			4 000	
EU standard maximum torque (Nm)	240		270			270	320
Maximum torque engine speed (rpm)	1 750		1 750			2 000	
Fuel	Diesel		Diesel			Diesel	
Catalytic converter	Yes		Yes			Yes	
Particle emission filter (PEF)	Yes		Yes			Yes	
GEARBOXES	Manual (5-speed)	Electronic gearbox system (6-speed)	Manual (6-speed)	Electronic gearbox system (6-speed)	Electronic gearbox system (6-speed)	Electronic gearbox system (6-speed)	Automatic (6-speed)
OIL CAPACITIES (in litres)							
Engine (with filter replacement)	3.75	3.75	-		-	5.25	5.25

...S: model fitted with Stop & Start.
UA...: CITROËN Grand C4 Picasso (7-seat).
UE...: CITROËN Grand C4 Picasso (5-seat).
UD...: CITROËN C4 Picasso (5-seat).
...CU1: commercial versions.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

TECHNICAL DATA

MODELS:	ENGINES AND GEARBOXES		
Model codes: **UA... UE... UD...**	**RHE-8** **RHE-8/CU1**	**RHE-8/P**	**RHH-A**
DIESEL ENGINES	**HDi 150**		**HDi 163**
Cubic capacity (cc)	1 997		1 997
Bore x stroke (mm)	85 x 88		85 x 88
EU standard maximum power (kW)	110		120
Maximum power engine speed (rpm)	3 750		3 750
EU standard maximum torque (Nm)	340		340
Maximum torque engine speed (rpm)	2 000		2 000
Fuel	Diesel		Diesel
Catalytic converter	Yes		Yes
Particle emission filter (PEF)	Yes		Yes
GEARBOXES	Manual (6-speed)	Electronic gearbox system (6-speed)	Automatic (6-speed)
OIL CAPACITIES (in litres)			
Engine (with filter replacement)	5.25	-	5.25

UA...: CITROËN Grand C4 Picasso (7-seat).
UE...: CITROËN Grand C4 Picasso (5-seat).
UD...: CITROËN C4 Picasso (5-seat).
...CU1: commercial versions.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WEIGHTS AND TOWED LOADS (in kg)		
Diesel engines	**HDi 110**	
Gearboxes	**Manual**	**Electronic gearbox system**
Model codes: UA... UE... UD...	**9HZ-C**	**9HZ-H/P**
- Unladen weight	1 530 - 1 484 - 1 489	1 539 - 1 494 - 1 499
- Kerb weight	1 605 - 1 559 - 1 564	1 614 - 1 569 - 1 574
- Payload	720 - 546 - 561	711 - 536 - 561
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	2 250 - 2 030 - 2 050	2 250 - 2 030 - 2 060
- Gross train weight (GTW)		
on a 12 % gradient	3 130	3 130
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit)		
on a 10 % or 12 % gradient	880 - 1 100 - 1 080	880 - 1 100 - 1 070
- Braked trailer* (with load transfer within GTW limit)	1 180 - 1 300 - 1 300	1 180 - 1 300 - 1 300
- Unbraked trailer	750	750
- Recommended nose weight	50 - 60 - 60	50 - 60 - 60

* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, on condition that the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by the same amount; warning, towing with a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated apply up to a maximum altitude of 1,000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1,000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 100 km/h (approx. 60 mph) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle in order to protect the engine; when the ambient temperature is higher than 37 °C, limit the weight towed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WEIGHTS AND TOWED LOADS (in kg)			
Diesel engines	**HDi 110**		
Gearboxes	**Manual**	**Electronic gearbox system**	**Electronic gearbox system**
Model codes: UA... UE... UD...	**9HR-8**	**9HR-8/P**	**9HR-8/PS**
- Unladen weight	1 490 - 1 430 - 1 430	1 510 - 1 470 - 1 420	1 520 - 1 480 - 1 430
- Kerb weight	1 565 - 1 505 - 1 505	1 585 - 1 545 - 1 495	1 595 - 1 555 - 1 505
- Payload	760 - 670 - 620	740 - 630 - 640	730 - 620 - 630
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	2 250 - 2 100 - 2 050	2 250 - 2 100 - 2 060	2 250 - 2 100 - 2 060
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12 % gradient	3 130	3 130	3 130
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10 % or 12 % gradient	880 - 1 030 - 1 080	880 - 1 030 - 1 070	750 - 900 - 940
- Braked trailer* (with load transfer within GTW limit)	1 180 - 1 330 - 1 380	1 180 - 1 330 - 1 370	1 050 - 1 200 - 1 240
- Unbraked trailer	750	750 - 750 - 745	750
- Recommended nose weight	60	60	60

* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, on condition that the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by the same amount; warning, towing with a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated apply up to a maximum altitude of 1,000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1,000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 100 km/h (approx. 60 mph) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle in order to protect the engine; when the ambient temperature is higher than 37 °C, limit the weight towed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WEIGHTS AND TOWED LOADS (in kg)		
Diesel engines	**HDi 138**	
Gearboxes	**Electronic gearbox system**	**Automatic**
Model codes: UA... UE... UD...	**RHJ-H/P**	**RHR-J**
- Unladen weight	1 620 - 1 582 - 1 581	1 650 - 1 611 - 1 640
- Kerb weight	1 695 - 1 657 - 1 656	1 725 - 1 686 - 1 715
- Payload	700 - 558 - 559	700 - 559 - 510
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	2 320 - 2 140 - 2 140	2 350 - 2 170 - 2 150
- Gross train weight (GTW)		
on a 12 % gradient	3 620 - 3 590 - 3 540	3 550 - 3 520 - 3 550
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit)		
on a 10 % or 12 % gradient	1 300 - 1 450 - 1 400	1 200 - 1 350 - 1 400
- Braked trailer* (with load transfer with GTW limit)	1 500	1 500
- Unbraked trailer	750	750
- Recommended nose weight	70 - 60 - 60	60

* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, on condition that the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by the same amount; warning, towing with a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated apply up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 62 mph (approx 100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle in order to protect the engine; when the ambient temperature is higher than 37 °C, limit the weight towed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WEIGHTS AND TOWED LOADS (in kg)			
Diesel engines	**HDi 150**		**HDi 163**
Gearboxes	**Manual**	**Electronic gearbox system**	**Automatic**
Type codes: UA... UE... UD...	**RHE-8**	**RHE-8/P**	**RHH-A**
- Unladen weight	1 613 - 1 580 - 1 610	-	1 637 - 1 601 - 1 614
- Kerb weight	1 688 - 1 655 - 1 685	-	1 712 - 1 676 - 1 689
- Payload	695 - 685 - 520	-	688 - 689 - 536
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	2 308 - 2 265 - 2 130	-	2 325 - 2 290 - 2 150
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12 % gradient	3 508 - 3 515 - 3 530	-	3 525 - 3 490 - 3 550
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10 % or 12 % slope	1 200 - 1 250 - 1 400	-	1 200 - 1 200 - 1 400
- Braked trailer* (with load transfer with GTW limit)	1 400 - 1 500 - 1 600	-	1 500
- Unbraked trailer	750	-	750
- Recommended nose weight	70	-	60

* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, on condition that the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by the same amount; warning, towing with a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated apply up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 62 mph (approx 100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle in order to protect the engine; when the ambient temperature is higher than 37 °C, limit the weight towed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WEIGHTS AND TOWED LOADS (in kg)- COMMERCIAL VERSIONS		
Petrol engines	**VTi 120**	**THP 155**
Gearboxes	**Manual**	**Electronic gearbox system**
Model codes: UA... UD...	**UA5FS-0/CU1 UD5FS-0/CU1**	**UA5FV-8/PCU1 UD5FV-8/PCU1**
- Unladen weight	1 560 - 1 591	1 600 - 1 590
- Kerb weight	1 635 - 1 666	1 675 - 1 665
- Payload	630 - 624	620 - 620
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)*	2 190 - 2 215	2 220 - 2 210
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12 % gradient**	3 290 - 3 415	3 420 - 3 410
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10 % or 12 % gradient***	1 100 - 1 200	1 200 - 1 200
- Braked trailer (with load transfer within GTW limit)	-	-
- Unbraked trailer	750 - 750	750 - 750
- Recommended nose weight	70 - 60	70 - 60

* If the maximum rear axle weight is exceeded when the vehicle is towing, the maximum speed is limited to 50 mph (80 km/h) as defined by point 2.7 of the EU Directive.

** If the the gross vehicle weight is exceeded when the vehicle is towing, the maximum speed is limited to 50 mph (80 km/h) as defined by point 2.7 of the EU Directive.

*** Maximum weight of the braked trailer within the GTW limit; warning, towing with a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated apply up to a maximum altitude of 1,000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1,000 metres of altitude.

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle in order to protect the engine; when the ambient temperature is higher than 37 °C, limit the weight towed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WEIGHTS AND TOWED LOADS (in kg) - COMMERCIAL VERSIONS						
Diesel engines	**HDi 110**		**HDi 110**		**HDi 138**	**HDi 150**
Gearboxes	**Manual**	**Electronic gearbox system**	**Manual**	**Electronic gearbox system**	**Electronic gearbox system**	**Manual**
Model codes UA... UD...	**UA9HZ-C/CU1 UD9HZ-C/CU1**	**UA9HZ-H/PCU1 UD9HZ-H/PCU1**	**UA9HR-8/CU1 UD9HR-8/CU1**	**UA9HR-8/PCU1 UD9HR-8/PCU1**	**UARHJ-H/PCU1 UDRHJ-H/PCU1**	**UARHE-8/CU1 UDRHE-8/CU1**
- Unladen weight	1 571 - 1 635	1 600 - 1 646	1 630 - 1 630	-	1 665 - 1 691	1 685 - 1 680
- Kerb weight	1 646 - 1 710	1 675 - 1 721	1 705 - 1705	-	1 740 - 1 766	1 760 - 1 755
- Payload	634 - 620	620 - 624	620 - 620	-	620 - 624	620 - 620
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)*	2 205 - 2 255	2 220 - 2 270	2 250 - 2 250	-	2 285 - 2 315	2 305 - 2 300
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12 % gradient**	3 125 - 3 130	3 120 - 3 130	3 150 - 3 150	-	3 585 - 3 540	3 555 - 3 550
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10 % or 12 % gradient***	920 - 875	900 - 860	900 - 900	-	1 300 - 1 225	1 250 - 1 250
- Braked trailer (with load transfer within GTW limit)	-	-	-	-	-	-
- Unbraked trailer	750 - 750	750 - 750	750 - 750	-	750 - 750	750 - 750
- Recommended nose weight	40 - 60	40 - 60	70 - 60	-	55 - 60	70 - 60

* If the maximum rear axle weight is exceeded when the vehicle is towing, the maximum speed is limited to 50 mph (80 km/h) as defined by point 2.7 of the EU Directive.

** If the the gross vehicle weight is exceeded when the vehicle is towing, the maximum speed is limited to 50 mph (80 km/h) as defined by point 2.7 of the EU Directive.

*** Maximum weight of the braked trailer within the GTW limit; warning, towing with a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

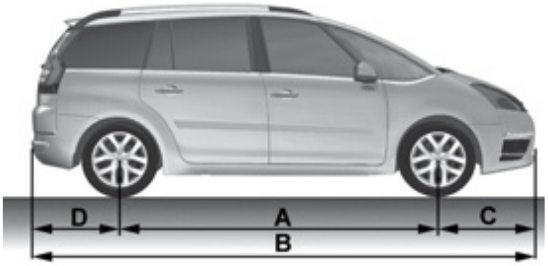
The GTW and towed load values indicated apply up to a maximum altitude of 1,000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1,000 metres of altitude.

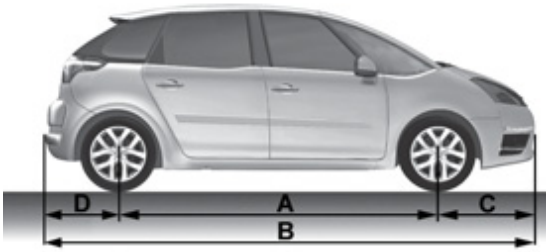
High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle in order to protect the engine; when the ambient temperature is higher than 37 °C, limit the weight towed.

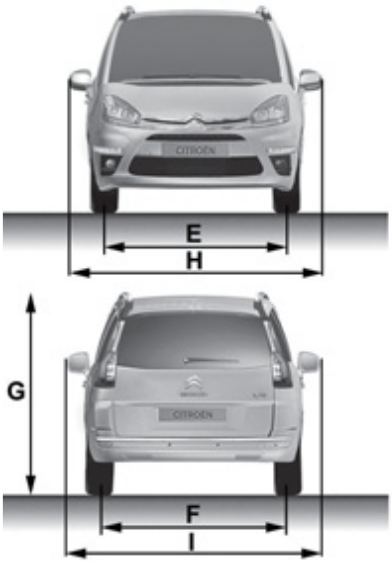
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

DIMENSIONS (IN METRES)

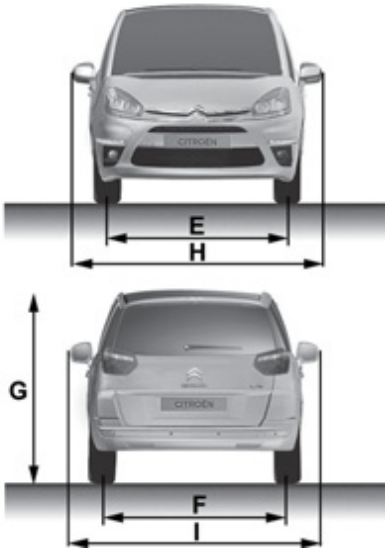
Exterior (CITROËN Grand C4 Picasso and CITROËN C4 Picasso)







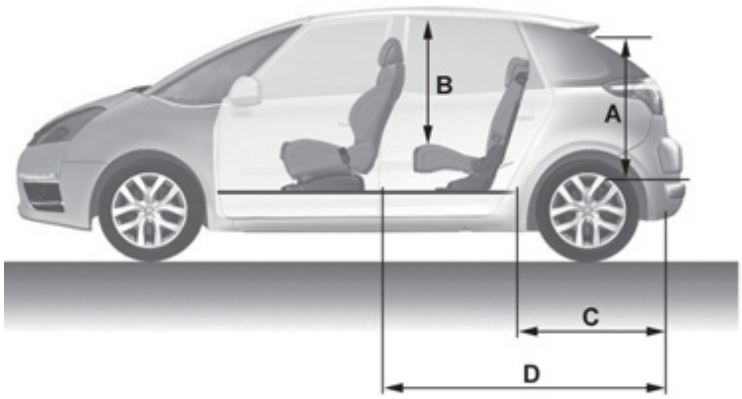
	CITROËN Grand C4 Picasso	CITROËN C4 Picasso
A	2.730	2.730
B	4.590	4.470
C	0.990	0.990
D	0.870	0.750
E	1.510	1.510
F	1.540	1.540
G*	1.660 to 1.710	1.660 to 1.680
H	2.100	2.100
I	1.830	1.830

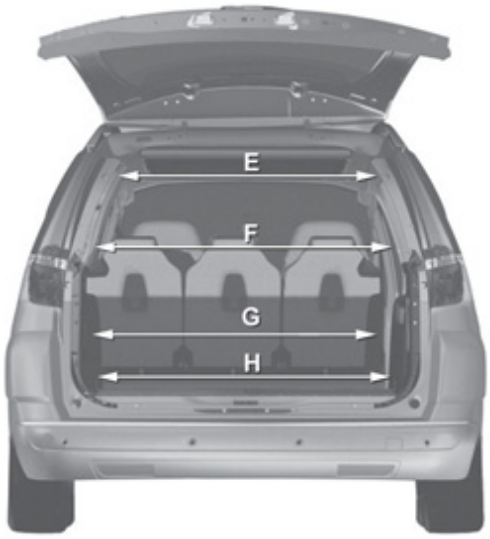


* Depending on suspension and roof bars.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Interior (CITROËN C4 Picasso)



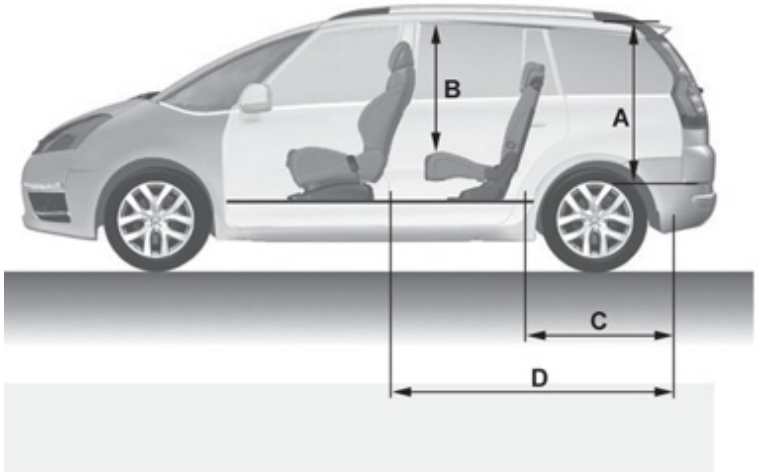


A	0.930
B	0.960/0.980
C	0.880/1.000
D	1.610/1.870

E	0.930
F	1.140
G	1.120
H	1.170

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Interior (CITROËN Grand C4 Picasso)



A	0.920
B	0.990/1.000
C	1.030/1.160
D	1.800/2.060

E	0.880
F	1.070
G	1.160
H	1.170

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

IDENTIFICATION MARKINGS

Various visible markings for identification of the vehicle.

The vehicle type and the identification number are also indicated on the registration document.

All CITROËN original replacement parts are available exclusively within the dealer network.

For your safety and in order to remain within the terms of the warranty, you are advised to use only CITROËN replacement parts.

A. Manufacturer's label

Located on the left-hand door centre pillar.

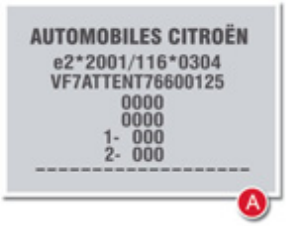
1. EU type approval number.
2. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN).
3. Gross vehicle weight.
4. Gross train weight.
5. Maximum weight on front axle.
6. Maximum weight on rear axle.

B. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

Located on the bodywork and behind the windscreen.

C. Paint colour code
Tyre reference
Tyre pressures

Located on the driver's door front pillar.



Use the tyre pressures recommended by CITROËN.

Check the tyre pressures regularly, when the tyres are cold.

Never reduce the pressure of a hot tyre.

When replacing tyres, it is essential to use the tyre sizes that are recommended for your vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

EMERGENCY OR ASSISTANCE CALL

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

EMERGENCY OR ASSISTANCE CALL

CITROËN LOCALISED EMERGENCY CALL

In an emergency, press this button for more than 2 seconds. Flashing of the green LED and a voice message confirm that the call has been made to the CITROËN Emergency team*.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request. The green LED goes off.
A press (at any time) of more than 8 seconds on this button, cancels the request.

The green LED remains on (without flashing) when communication is established. It goes off at the end of communication.

This call is dealt with by the CITROËN Emergency team which receives locating information from the vehicle and can send a detailed alert to the appropriate emergency services. In countries in which the team is not operational, or when the locating service has been expressly declined, the call is dealt with directly by the emergency services (112) without the vehicle location.

If an impact is detected by the airbag ECU, and independently of the deployment of any airbags, an emergency call is made automatically.

* These services are subject to conditions and availability.
Consult a CITROËN dealer.

CITROËN LOCALISED ASSISTANCE CALL

Press this button for more than 2 seconds to request assistance if the vehicle breaks down.
A voice message confirms that the call has been made*.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request.
The cancellation is confirmed by a voice message.

OPERATION OF THE SYSTEM

When the ignition is switched on, the green LED comes on for 3 seconds indicating that the system is operating correctly.

If the orange LED flashes: there is a system fault.
If the orange LED is on continuously: the backup battery must be replaced.
In either case, contact a CITROËN.

If you purchased your vehicle outside the CITROËN dealer network, we invite you to have a dealer check the configuration of these services and, if desired, modified to suit your wishes. In a multi-lingual country, configuration is possible in the official national language of your choice.

For technical reasons, particularly to improve the quality of Telematic services to customers, the manufacturer reserves the right to carry out updates to the vehicle's on-board telematic system.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

EMERGENCY OR ASSISTANCE CALL USING NaviDrive

CITROËN LOCALISED EMERGENCY CALL

Warning - the emergency call and the services are only active if the internal telephone is used with a valid SIM card. With a Bluetooth telephone and without a SIM card, these services are not operational.

In an emergency, press the SOS button until an audible signal is heard and a "Confirmation/Cancellation" screen is displayed (if valid SIM card inserted).

A call is made to the CITROËN Emergency team which receives locating information from the vehicle and can send a detailed alert to the relevant emergency services.

In countries in which the team is not operational, or when the locating service has been expressly declined, the call is sent to the emergency services (112).

If an impact is detected by the airbag control unit, and independently of the deployment of any airbags, an emergency call is made automatically.

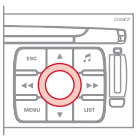
The message "Deteriorated emergency call" associated with flashing of the orange indicator lamp indicates a malfunction. Contact a CITROËN dealer.

CITROËN LOCALISED ASSISTANCE CALL

Press this button for access to CITROËN services.

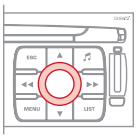
Select "Customer call" to request any information about the CITROËN marque.

Customer call



Select "CITROËN Assistance" to make a roadside assistance call.

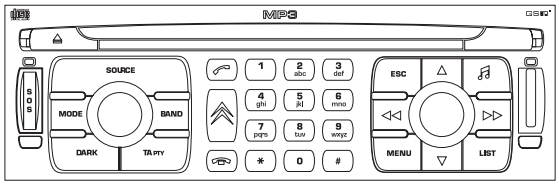
CITROËN Assistance



This service is subject to conditions and availability. Consult a CITROËN dealer. If you have purchased your vehicle outside the CITROËN dealer network, we invite you to have a dealer check the configuration of these services and, if desired, modified to suit your wishes.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



NaviDrive

MULTIMEDIA AUDIO/TELEPHONE SYSTEM JUKEBOX FUNCTION (10 GB)/GPS (EUROPE)

The NaviDrive is coded in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle.

For safety reasons, it is imperative that the driver carries out operations which require prolonged attention while the vehicle is stationary.

When the engine is switched off and to prevent discharging of the battery, the NaviDrive may switch off after a few minutes.

CONTENTS

01	First steps	p.	232
02	Voice commands and steering mounted controls	p.	233
03	Screen and main menu	p.	235
04	Navigation - Guidance	p.	239
05	Traffic information	p.	249
06	Audio/Video	p.	251
07	Telephone	p.	260
08	Configuration	p.	264
09	Screen menu map	p.	265
	Frequently asked questions	p.	271

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

01 FIRST STEPS

On/Off and Volume adjustment.

Selection of the source: radio, Jukebox, CD and auxiliary (AUX, if activated on the Configuration menu).

Long press: CD copy to hard disk.

Selection of wavebands FM1, FM2, FMast, AM.

Cancellation of the current operation.

Long press: return to the current application.

Selection of the previous/next MP3/USB/ Jukebox folder.

Audio option adjustments: front/rear, left/right balance, loudness, sound ambiences.

Selection of the display in the screen between modes: TRIP, TEL, NAV and AUDIO.

Long press on the SOS button: emergency call.

Modification of the screen display.

Long press: reinitialisation of the system.

Selection and confirmation.

SIM card slot.

Display the list of local radio stations, CD tracks or MP3/USB/Jukebox folders.

Long press: update the local radio stations.

TA (Traffic Announcement) function on/off.

Long press: access to the PTY (radio Programme TYpes) mode.

Access to "CITROËN" services menu.

Keypad for entering descriptions by successive presses.

Automatic search for a lower/ higher frequency.

Selection of the previous/next CD, MP3, USB or Jukebox track.

Long press: fast forward and backward play.

Display the main menu

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

1. Volume increase.
2. Volume decrease.
3. Mute.
4. RADIO:
   selection of the previous or next stored station.
   MP3/JUKEBOX:
   selection of the previous or next directory.
5. RADIO: automatic search for a higher frequency.
   CD/MP3/JUKEBOX:
   selection of the next track.
   CD/MP3:
   continuous press: fast forwards play.

1. Short press:
   Activation of voice recognition.
2. WHEN THE TELEPHONE IS NOT IN USE:
   Long press: access to the telephone menu (phone book, call list, ...).
   INCOMING CALL:
   Short press to accept.
   Long press to reject the call.
   CALL IN PROGRESS:
   Short press to hang up.
   Long press to access the telephone menu.
3. Personalisation:
   Short press: confirmation of the selection made using the dial.
4. Rotation:
   Move around the phone book, the call list.
   Selection of personalisation.

1. Displays the main screen.
2. Selection of the mode displayed (TRIP, TEL, NAV or AUDIO).
3. Abandon the operation in progress and return to the previous display.
4. Navigation through the menus.
5. Confirmation of the function selected.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

VOICE COMMANDS

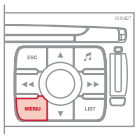
DISPLAYING THE LIST AND USING THEM

1

To display the list of available voice commands, press the voice recognition control to start the voice recognition, then say HELP or the voice recognition command.

For the same operation, press and hold the MENU button and select the "Voice commands list" function.

Voice commands list



2

Press the voice recognition control to start the voice recognition.

Say the words one by one and wait for the audible confirmation signal between each word.

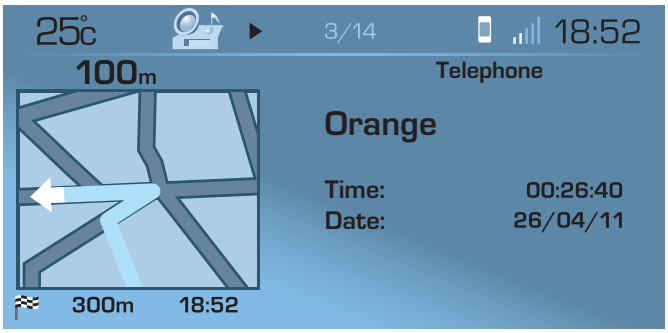
The list which follows is exhaustive.

LEVEL 1	LEVEL 2	LEVEL 3
radio	memory autostore previous/next list	1 to 6/*
cd player Jukebox (if activated) USB	previous/next track track number/track scan random play directory (CD-MP3 inserted) list	1 to 250/* previous/next repeat help/what can I say/cancel
call/guide to	"Pre-recorded description"	
telephone	last number voice box voice mail directory	"Pre-recorded description"
message	display read directory	"Pre-recorded description"
navigation	stop/resume zoom in/out view	* destination vehicle
traffic info	display read	
display	audio telephone trip computer Navigation air conditioning	
previous/next stop delete yes/no	for all level 1 and 2	
* help/what can I say/cancel	for all level 1, 2 or *	

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

03 SCREEN AND MAIN MENU

> COLOUR SCREEN



This displays the following information, via the audio control panel:

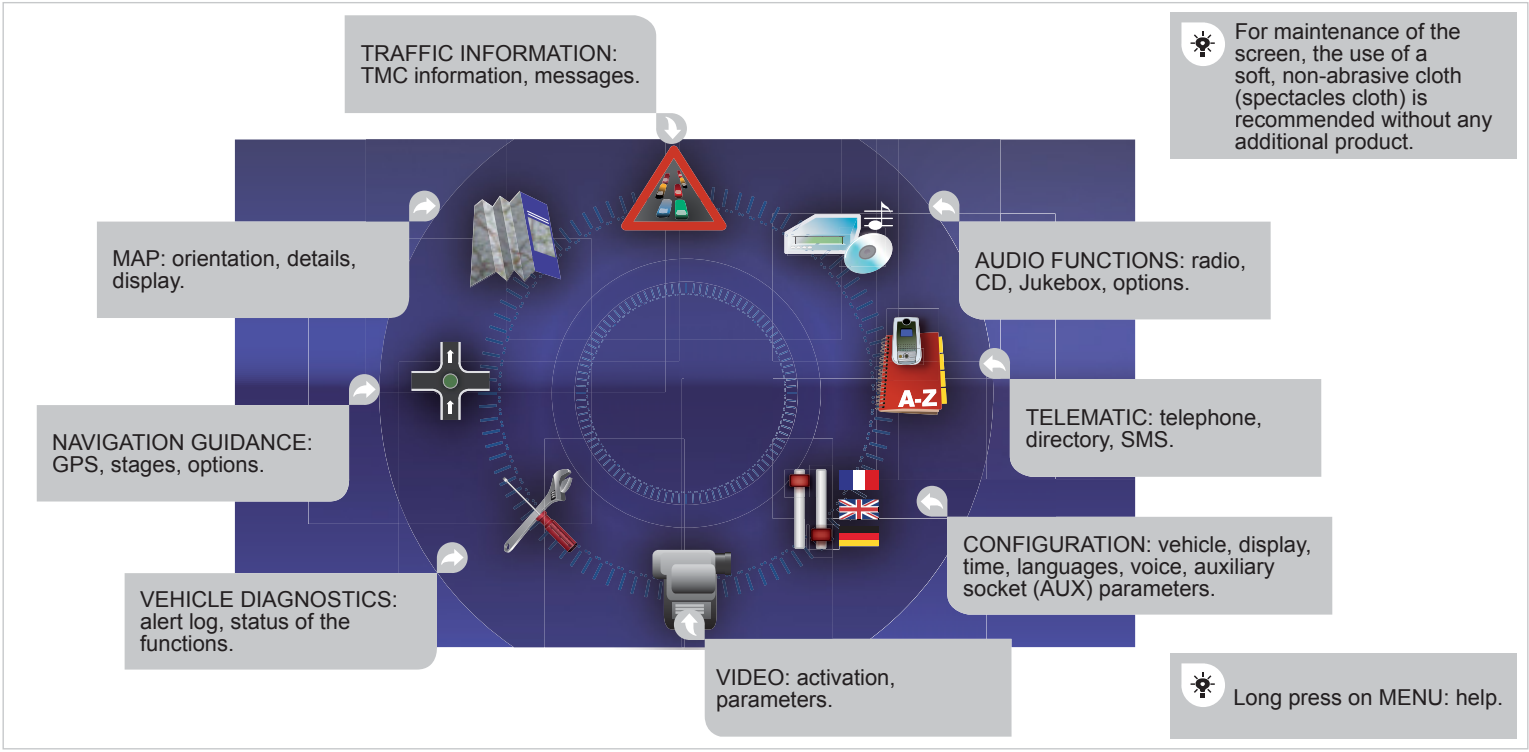
- time,
- date,
- ambient temperature (if there is a risk of ice, you are warned by a message),
- audio source displays (radio, CD, jukebox, ...),
- telematic system displays (telephone, services, ...),
- check of openings (doors, boot, ...),
- warning messages (e.g.: "Fuel level low") and vehicle function status messages (e.g.: "Auto lighting activated") displayed temporarily,
- trip computer information,
- GPS (Europe) satellite navigation system information.

Screen configuration: refer to the section - Screen menu map.

The system uses the complete and detailed NAVTEQ maps installed directly on the equipment's hard disk.
Updates of the maps of the UK and of the other European countries, supplied by our partner NAVTEQ, are available from the CITROËN network.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

03 SCREEN AND MAIN MENU



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

DISPLAY ACCORDING TO THE CONTEXT

Press the OK dial to access short-cut menus according to the display on the screen.

NAVIGATION (IF NAVIGATION IS IN PROGRESS):

1 resume/stop guidance

1 divert route

1 route type

1 consult traffic info

1 zoom/scroll map

IN "ZOOM/SCROLL" MODE

1 position info

1 select as destination

1 select as stage

1 store this position

1 exit map mode

1 guidance option

INTERNAL TELEPHONE

1 call list

1 dial

1 phone book

1 voice mail

BLUETOOTH TELEPHONE

1 call list

1 call

1 phone book

1 private mode/hands-free mode

1 place call on hold/resume call

VEHICLE DIAGNOSTICS

1 alert log

1 status of functions

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CD (MP3 OR AUDIO)

- 1 copy CD to JBX/stop copy
- 1 activate/deactivate Introscan
- 1 activate/deactivate random play
- 1 activate/deactivate repeat

JUKEBOX

- 1 select playlist
- 1 activate/deactivate Introscan
- 1 activate/deactivate random play
- 1 activate/deactivate repeat

RADIO

- 1 enter a frequency
- 1 activate/deactivate RDS
- 1 activate/deactivate REG mode
- 1 hide/display "Radio Text"

USB

- 1 copy USB to JBX/stop copy
- 1 eject USB
- 1 activate/deactivate Introscan
- 1 activate/deactivate random play
- 1 activate/deactivate repeat

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

SELECTING A DESTINATION

Tip: for a detailed global view of the menus available, refer to the "Screen menu map" part of this section.

1. Press the MENU button.

2. Turn the dial and select the Navigation Guidance function.

3. Press the dial to confirm the selection.

4. Turn the dial and select the "Destination choice" function.

   Destination choice

5. Press the dial to confirm the selection.

6. Turn the dial and select the "Enter an address" function.

   Enter an address

7. Press the dial to confirm the selection.

8. When the country has been selected, turn the dial and select the "Town" function.

   Town

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

9 Press the dial to confirm the selection.

10 Turn the dial and select the letters of the town one by one confirming each time by pressing the dial.

Paris

To speed up the process, the "Post code" can be entered instead of the name of the "Town".
Use the alphanumeric keypad to enter the letters and digits and "*" to correct (limit of 5 characters).

11 Turn the dial and select OK.

OK

12 Press the dial to confirm the selection.

13 Repeat steps 8 to 12 for the "Road" and "N°" functions.

14 Select "OK" on the "Enter an address" page.

OK

15 Press the dial to confirm the selection.

Select the "Store" function to record the address entered in a directory record and press the dial to confirm the selection.
The points of interest (POI) indicate all of the service locations in the vicinity (hotels, various businesses, airports, ...).

Store **POI**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ADDING A STAGE

1. During guidance, press the MENU button.
2. Turn the dial and select the "Navigation guidance" function.
3. Press the dial to confirm the selection.
4. Turn the dial and select the "Journey legs and route" function.

   Journey legs and route
5. Press the dial to confirm the selection.
6. Select the "Add a stage" function (9 stages maximum) and press the dial to confirm.

   Add a stage
7. Enter for example a new address.

   Enter an address
8. When the new address has been entered, select "OK" and press the dial to confirm.
9. Select OK and press the dial to confirm the order of the stages.

Select "Strict" (the stage must be completed in order to continue to the next destination) or "Proximity" then press the dial to confirm.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

GUIDANCE SPEECH SYNTHESIS

The volume of the Risk Areas POI alerts can only be adjusted during the alert using the volume adjustment control.

During announcements, the volume of each speech synthesis function (guidance, traffic information...) can be adjusted directly using the volume adjustment control.

1 Press the MENU button.

2 Turn the dial and select the "Navigation guidance" function.

3 Press the dial to confirm the selection.

4 Turn the dial and select the "Guidance options" function.

Guidance options

5 Press the dial to confirm the selection.

6 Select the "Adjust speech synthesis" function and press the dial to confirm.

Adjust speech synthesis

7 Press the dial then adjust the volume of the speech synthesis or select the "Deactivate" function and press the dial to confirm.

Deactivate

8 Select "OK" and press the dial to confirm.

OK

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

List of POI

- Flying club
- Airport
- Lay-by
- Bowling alley
- Casino
- Business park
- Sports centre
- Town centre
- Cinema
- Sports complexes
- Culture/Museum
- Vineyard
- Garage
- Station
- Dock station
- Bus station
- Hospitals
- Hotels
- Vehicle hire
- Town halls
- Historical monuments
- Tourist information
- Theme park
- Park/Garden
- Park and ride
- Car park
- Covered parking
- Skating rink
- Ports
- Restaurant
- Shopping
- Show/Exhibition
- Winter sports centre
- Service station
- Supermarkets
- Golf course
- Tourism
- University
- Night life

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

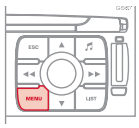
UPDATING POIs

! The detailed procedure is available on the following website: "citroen.navigation.com".

DISPLAYING RISK AREAS POIs

1

Press the MENU button.



2

Select "Map" and confirm by pressing "OK".

Map

3

Select "Map details" and confirm by pressing "OK".

Map details

4

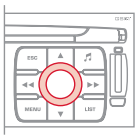
Select "Transport and automobiles" and confirm by pressing "OK".

Transport and automobiles

5

Select "Risk areas" and confirm by pressing "OK".

Risk areas



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

GUIDANCE OPTIONS

The route presented depends directly on the guidance options. Changing these options may completely change the route.

1 Press the MENU button.

2 Turn the dial and select the "Navigation guidance" function.

3 Press the dial to confirm the selection.

4 Turn the dial and select the "Guidance options" function.

Guidance options

5 Press the dial to confirm the selection.

6 Turn the dial and select the "Define calculation criteria" function.

Define calculation criteria

7 Press the dial to confirm the selection.

8 Turn the dial and select, for example, the "Distance/time" function.

Distance/time

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The volume of the Risk Areas POI alerts can only be adjusted during the alert.

9 Press the dial to confirm the selection.

10 Turn the dial and select the "Traffic info" function if you wish to receive the traffic information announcements.

Traffic info

Tick this box for optimum operation of the traffic information, diversions will be suggested.

11 Press the dial to confirm the selection.

12 Select "OK" and press the dial to confirm.

OK

SETTING RISK AREAS ALERT PARAMETERS

1 Repeat steps 1 to 5 of the guidance option.

2 Turn the dial and select the "Set risk area parameters" function, then press the dial to confirm the warning message. Press the dial to confirm the selection.

Set risk area parameters

3 Select:
- visual warnings,
- audible warnings with an announcement duration (in seconds),
- warn during guidance only, then select OK and press the dial to confirm.

OK

! These functions are only available if the risk areas have been downloaded and installed on the system.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ACTIONS ON THE MAP

1 Press the MENU button.

2 Turn the dial and select the "Map" function.

3 Press the dial to confirm the selection.

4 Turn the dial and select the "Map details" function.
Permits selection of the services which can be seen on the map (hotels, restaurants, risk areas...).

Map details

MAP ORIENTATION

For improved visibility, beyond the scale of 10 km, the map automatically switches to North Orientation.

4 Repeat steps 1 to 3 then turn the dial and select the "Map orientation" function.

Map orientation

5 Press the dial to confirm the selection.

6 Turn the dial and select the orientation of your choice.

Vehicle direction

North direction

3D view

7 Select "OK" and press the dial to confirm.

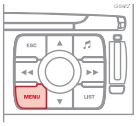
OK

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

DISPLAYING THE MAP IN A WINDOW OR IN FULL SCREEN MODE

1

Press the MENU button.



2

Turn the dial and select the "Map" function.

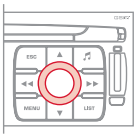
3

Press the dial to confirm the selection.

4

Turn the dial and select the "Display map" function.

Display map



5

Press the dial to confirm the selection.

6

Turn the dial and select the "Map in window" or "Full screen map" tab.

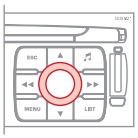
Map in window

Full screen map

7

Select "OK" and press the dial to confirm

OK



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CONFIGURING THE FILTERING OF TMC ANNOUNCEMENTS

The TMC (Traffic Message Channel) messages provide information relating to the traffic and the weather conditions, received in real time and communicated to the driver in the form of audible announcements and icons on the navigation map.
The guidance system may then suggest a diversion route.

1. Press the MENU button.

2. Turn the dial and select the "Traffic information" function.

3. Press the dial to confirm the selection.

4. Turn the dial and select the "Filter traffic information" function.

   Filter traffic information

5. Press the dial to confirm the selection.

6. Select the "Geographic filter" function and press the dial to confirm.

   Geographic filter

7. Turn the dial and select the filter of your choice.

   Around the vehicle

   On the route

8. Select "OK" and press the dial to confirm.

   OK

i The filters are independent and one replaces the other.
We recommend:
- a filter of 6 miles (10 km) around the vehicle in heavy traffic,
- a filter of 30 miles (50 km) around the vehicle or a filter on the route for motorway journeys.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CONFIGURING THE DISPLAY OF TMC MESSAGES

We recommend that you do not select the "New message display" tab for regions with heavy traffic.

1 Press the MENU button.

2 Turn the dial and select the "Traffic information" function.

3 Press the dial to confirm the selection.

4 Turn the dial and select the "Configure message announcement" function.

Configure message announcement

5 Press the dial to confirm the selection.

6 Select the "Read messages" tab.

Read messages

7 The Traffic Information Messages will be read by the voice synthesiser.
Select the "New message display" tab.
The traffic information messages are extended to the filters selected (geographic...) and can also be displayed when guidance is not active.

New message display

8 Select "OK" and press the dial to confirm.

OK

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

06 AUDIO/VIDEO

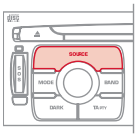
The external environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, ...) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This is a normal effect of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not indicate any failure of the audio equipment.

RADIO

SELECTING A STATION

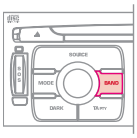
1

Press the SOURCE button several times in succession and select RADIO.



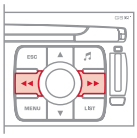
2

Press the BAND button to select a waveband: FM1, FM2, FMast, AM.



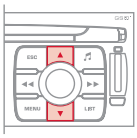
3

Briefly press one of the buttons to carry out an automatic search of the radio stations.

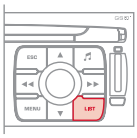


4

Press one of the buttons to carry out a manual search of the radio stations.



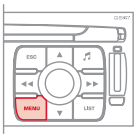
Press the LIST button to display the list of stations received locally (60 maximum).
To update this list, press for more than two seconds.



RDS

1

Press the MENU button.



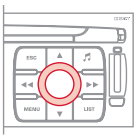
2

Select "Audio functions" then press "OK".

3

Select the "FM waveband preferences" function then press "OK".

FM waveband preferences



4

Select "Activate RDS" then press "OK". RDS appears on the screen.

Activate RDS

RDS, if displayed, enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

06 AUDIO/VIDEO

MP3 CD

INFORMATION AND ADVICE

Empty CDs are not recognised and may damage the system.

The MP3 format, an abbreviation of MPEG 1.2 & 2.5 Audio Layer 3, is an audio compression standard which permits the recording of several tens of music files on a single disc.

In order to be able to play a recorded CDR or CDRW, when recording, the ISO 9660 level 1.2 or Joliet file format is recommended.

If the disc is recorded in another format, it may not be played correctly.

It is recommended that the same recording format is always used for an individual disc, with as low a speed as possible (4x maximum) for optimum sound quality.

In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet format is recommended.

The audio system will only play files with the extension ".mp3" with a sampling rate of 22.05 KHz or 44.1 KHz. No other type of file (.wma, .mp4, .m3u...) can be played.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters without using special characters (e.g. " ? ; ù) to avoid any playing or displaying problems.

CD

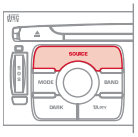
PLAYING A CD OR AN MP3 COMPILATION

Insert circular compact discs only. Some anti-pirating systems, on original discs or CDs copied using a personal recorder, may generate malfunctions regardless of the quality of the original player.

Insert an audio CD or an MP3 compilation in the player, play begins automatically.

1

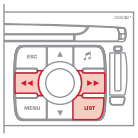
If the player already contains a disc, press the SOURCE button several times in succession and select CD to listen to it.



2

Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.

Press the LIST button to display the list of tracks on the CD or of the folders of the MP3 compilation.



The play and display of an MP3 compilation may depend on the disc burning software and/or the settings used. We recommend use of the ISO 9660 file system format.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

USING THE USB PORT*

The list of compatible equipment is available from CITROËN dealers.

1

The audio files are transmitted from a USB memory stick to your audio system, to be listened to via the vehicle's speakers.

Do not connect a hard drive or USB equipment other than USB memory sticks in FAT 16 or FAT 32 format (NTFS not supported). This could damage your installation.

2

USB memory stick (1.1, 1.2 and 2.0):

- the USB memory sticks must be in FAT or FAT 32 format (NTFS not supported),
- navigation through the file base is by means of the steering mounted controls.

CONNECTING A USB MEMORY STICK

1

Connect the memory stick to the port, directly or using a lead. If the audio equipment is switched on, the USB source is detected as soon as it is connected. Play begins automatically after a delay which depends on the capacity of the USB memory stick.

The file formats recognised are .mp3 (mpeg1 layer 3 only).

!

Do not connect a hard drive or USB equipment other than USB memory sticks in FAT 16 or FAT 32 format (NTFS not supported). This could damage your installation.

* Availability according to vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

PLAYING AN MP3 USB MEMORY STICK

1 Connect a USB memory stick to the port provided.

2 If another source is being played, press the SOURCE button several times in succession and select "USB" to play it.

3 Press one of the buttons to select a track on the USB memory stick.
Press the LIST button to display the list of folders on the MP3 USB memory stick.

! To eject the USB memory stick, use the short-cut menu (press OK) or press the MENU button, select "Audio functions", "USB", then select "Eject USB".
The play and display of an MP3 compilation may depend on the file format used.

! In order to be read, the USB memory stick must be formatted FAT 16 or 32. The player only reads USB memory sticks.

JUKEBOX

COPYING AN MP3 USB MEMORY STICK ONTO THE HARD DISK

1 Insert a USB memory stick in the space provided and press the MENU button.

2 Select "Audio functions" and press the dial to confirm.

3 Select "USB" and press the dial to confirm.

USB

4 Select "Copy USB to jukebox" and press the dial to confirm.

Copy USB to jukebox

5 Select "Complete disc" to copy the entire USB memory stick and press the dial to confirm.

Complete disc

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

COPYING A CD ONTO THE HARD DISK

1 Insert an audio CD or an MP3 compilation and press the MENU button.

2 Select "Audio functions" then select CD and press the dial to confirm.

Audio functions

3 Select "Copy CD to jukebox" and press the dial to confirm.

Copy CD to jukebox

4 Select "Complete CD" to copy the entire CD and press the dial to confirm.

Complete CD

5 To stop the copy, repeat points 2 and 3. Select "Stop copy" and press the dial to confirm.

Stop copy

The "Auto creation" tab automatically copies the CD by default into an album of the type "album n°...".

6 Select the letters one by one and select "OK" to confirm.

OK

The audio or MP3 CD is copied onto the hard disk. Copying may take up to 20 minutes depending on the length the CD. While copying is in progress, it is not possible to listen to albums previously copied to the hard disk or to CDs.

If it is not an MP3 CD, the Jukebox automatically compresses the CD in MP3 format. The compression may take approximately 20 minutes depending on the length the CD. During this compression phase, it is possible to listen to the CD or to albums previously copied to the hard disk.

A long press on the SOURCE button starts copying of the CD.

! It is not possible to copy files from the Jukebox to a CD.
The "Stop the CD copy" action does not delete the files which have already been transferred onto the jukebox hard disk.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

LISTENING TO THE JUKEBOX

1 Press the SOURCE button several times in succession and select the "Jukebox" function.

Jukebox

2 Press the LIST button.

3 Turn the dial to select the files.

Press the ESC button to return to the first file level.

RENAMING AN ALBUM

1 Press the MENU button.

2 Select "Audio functions" and press the dial to confirm.

3 Select the "Jukebox" function and press the dial to confirm.

Jukebox

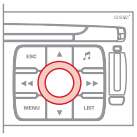
4 Select the "Jukebox management" function and press the dial to confirm.

Jukebox management

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

5

Select the album to be renamed and press the dial to confirm.



6

Select the "Rename" tab and press the dial to confirm.

Rename

7

Turn the dial and select the letters of the album title one by one confirming each time by pressing the dial.

Use the alphanumeric keypad to enter the letters of the album title one by one.

8

Select "OK" and press the dial to confirm.

OK

To rename the tracks of an album, follow the same procedure, selecting the tracks to be renamed.

Use the ESC button to exit from the list of tracks.

Select the "Delete" function to delete an album or a track from the Jukebox.

Delete

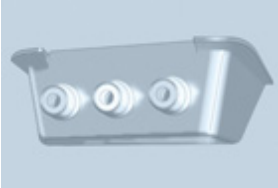
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

USING THE AUXILIARY INPUT (AUX)

AUDIO (JACK/RCA) CABLE NOT SUPPLIED

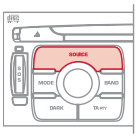
Press the MENU button then select the "Configuration" function, then "Sounds", then "Activate auxiliary source" to activate the NaviDrive audio/telephone auxiliary input.

1 Connect the portable device (MP3 player…) to the audio sockets (white and red, RCA type) located in the glovebox using a suitable audio cable (JACK or RCA).



2

Press the SOURCE button several times in succession and select AUX.



Display and control is on the portable device.

! It is not possible to copy the files onto the hard disk via the auxiliary input.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

VIDEO MENU

You can connect video equipment (camcorder, digital camera, DVD player...) to the three audio/video sockets, located in the glove box.

1 After connecting the video equipment, press the MENU button.

2 Turn the dial and select the "Video" function.

3 Press the dial to confirm the selection.

4 Turn the dial and select the "Activate video mode" function to activate/ deactivate the video.

Activate video mode

5 Press the dial to confirm the selection.

6 Turn the dial and select the "Video parameters" function to set the display format, the brightness, the contrast and the colours.

Video parameters

7 Press the dial to confirm the selection.

Pressing the DARK button disconnects display of the video.

Pressing the SOURCE button several times in succession permits the selection of an audio source other than that of the video.

! Videos can only be displayed when stationary.

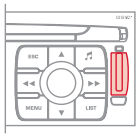
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

07 INTERNAL TELEPHONE

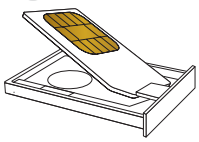
INSTALLING YOUR SIM CARD
(NOT SUPPLIED)

1

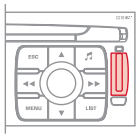
Open the holder by pressing the button using the tip of a pen.



2

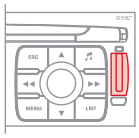


Install the SIM card in the holder and then insert it in the slot.



3

To remove the SIM card, repeat step 1.



! Your SIM card must be installed and removed with the NaviDrive audio and telematics system switched off and the ignition off.

ENTERING THE PIN CODE

1

Enter the PIN code on the keypad.

PIN code

2

Confirm the PIN code by pressing the # button.

When entering your PIN code, tick the "Store PIN" tab to gain access to the telephone without having to enter this code when it is used subsequently.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

07 BLUETOOTH TELEPHONE

CONNECTING A BLUETOOTH TELEPHONE

The services offered by the telephone depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth equipment used. Refer to your telephone's manual and your operator to check which services you have access to. A list of mobile telephones which offer the best range of services is available from dealers.

!

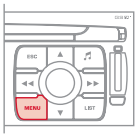
For reasons of safety, the driver should only carry out operations which require prolonged attention when the vehicle is stationary (pairing the Bluetooth mobile telephone to the hands-free kit).

1

Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function.
The last telephone connected is reconnected automatically.

2

Press the MENU button, select "Telematics", then "Bluetooth functions". Press the dial to confirm each operation.



3

Select "Bluetooth activation mode", then "Activated and visible". Press the dial to confirm each operation.

To find and change the name of the CITROËN audio/telephone, repeat step 2 then select "Change the name of the audio/telephone".

4

On your telephone, select the name of the CITROËN audio/telephone. Enter the authentication code (0000 by default).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CONNECTING A BLUETOOTH TELEPHONE

To change the authentication code, repeat step 2 then select "Authentication code" and save the code of your choice.

Once the telephone has been connected, the system can synchronise the address book and the call list. Repeat step 2 then select "Phone book synchronisation mode". Select the synchronisation of your choice and press the dial to confirm.
The synchronisation may take a few minutes.

To change the telephone connected, repeat step 2 then select "List of matched peripheral equipment" and press OK to confirm. The list of previously connected telephones (10 maximum) appears. Select the telephone of your choice, confirm, then select "Connect" and press the dial to confirm.

The call list consists of calls made from the vehicle's telephone only.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

07 USING THE TELEPHONE

CALLING A CONTACT

1 Press the PICK UP button to display the telephone short-cut menu.

Select "Call list" or "Phone book" and press "OK". Select the number required and confirm to make the call.

2 Turn the dial and select the "Dial" function.

Dial

3 Press the dial to confirm the selection.

4 Dial the telephone number of your contact using the alphanumeric keypad.

To select the telephone used, press MENU, then select "Telematics", then "Bluetooth functions", then "Bluetooth activation mode". Then select:

- "Deactivated": to use the internal telephone,
- "Activated and visible": to use the Bluetooth telephone, visible to all telephones,
- "Activated and not visible": to use the Bluetooth telephone, not visible to other telephones, it is not possible to match a new telephone.

5 Press the PICK UP button to call the number dialled.

6 Press the HANG UP button to end the call.

ACCEPTING OR REJECTING A CALL

Press the PICK UP button to accept a call.

Press the HANG UP button to reject a call.

Press the end of the steering wheel stalk for more than 2 seconds to access the telephone menu: calls log, directory, voice mailbox.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SETTING THE DATE AND TIME

The "Configuration" function gives access to the colour, brightness and units settings and to voice commands.

! This adjustment must be carried out whenever the battery has been disconnected.

1 Press the MENU button.

2 Turn the dial and select the "Configuration" function.

3 Press the dial to confirm the selection.

4 Turn the dial and select the "Display configuration" function.

Display configuration

5 Press the dial to confirm the selection.

6 Turn the dial and select the "Set date and time" function.

Set date and time

7 Press the dial to confirm the selection.

8 Adjust the settings one by one confirming by pressing the dial. Next select the "OK" tab on the screen then confirm.

OK

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

09 SCREEN MENU MAP

NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

- **SELECT DESTINATION**
  - **enter an address**
    - country:
    - town:
    - road:
    - N°/_:
    - curr. loc
    - store
    - POI
      - near
      - on the route
      - around current place
  - **GPS coordinates**
  - **directory**
  - **previous destinations**
  - search by name
- **JOURNEY LEGS AND ROUTE**
  - **add a stage**
    - enter an address
    - directory
    - previous destinations
  - **order/delete journey legs**
  - **divert route**
  - **chosen destination**
- **GUIDANCE OPTIONS**
  - **define calculation criteria**
    - fastest
    - shortest
    - distance/time
    - with tolls
    - with ferry
    - traffic info
  - **set speech synthesis**
  - **activate/deactivate road names**
  - **delete last destinations**
- **STOP/RESUME GUIDANCE**

MAIN FUNCTION

- **OPTION A**
  - **option A1**
  - **option A2**
- **OPTION B...**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

09 SCREEN MENU MAP

MAP

- **MAP ORIENTATION**
  - **vehicle direction**
  - **north direction**
  - **3D view**
- **MAP DETAILS**
  - **administration and safety**
    - town halls, town centre
    - universities, colleges
    - hospitals
  - **hotels, restaurants and shops**
    - hotels
    - restaurants
    - vineyards
    - business centres
    - supermarkets, shopping
  - **culture, tourism and shows**
    - culture and museums
    - casinos and nightlife
    - cinemas and theatres
    - tourism
    - shows and exhibitions
  - **sports and open air centres**
    - sports centres
    - golf courses
    - skating rinks, bowling alleys
    - winter sports resorts
    - parks, gardens
    - theme parks
  - **transport and automobile**
    - airports, ports
    - stations, bus stations
    - vehicle rental
    - lay-bys, car parks
    - service stations, garages
- **DISPLAY MAP**
  - **full screen map**
  - **map in window**
- **MOVE THE MAP/FOLLOW VEHICLE**
- **MAP DATABASE DESCRIPTION**

TRAFFIC INFORMATION

- **READ MESSAGES**
- **FILTER TRAFFIC INFORMATION**
  - **geographic filter**
  - **store all messages**
  - **store messages**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

09 SCREEN MENU MAP

- 4 around the vehicle
- 4 on the route
- 3 **road information**
  - 4 traffic information
  - 4 road closure
  - 4 size limit
  - 4 road condition
  - 4 weather and visibility
- 3 **urban/city information**
  - 4 parking
  - 4 public transport
  - 4 demonstrations
- 2 **CONFIGURE MESSAGE ANNOUNCEMENT**
  - 3 **read messages**
  - 3 **new message display**

- 2 **SELECT TMC STATION**
  - 3 **automatic TMC**
  - 3 **manual TMC**
  - 3 **list of TMC stations**

1 AUDIO FUNCTIONS

- 2 **RADIO FAVOURITES**
  - 3 **enter a frequency**
  - 3 **activate/deactivate RDS mode**
  - 3 **activate/deactivate regional mode**
  - 3 **display/hide radio text**
- 2 **CD, USB, JUKEBOX FAVOURITES**
  - 3 **activate/deactivate Introscan (SCN)**
  - 3 **activate/deactivate Random mode (RDM)**
  - 3 **activate/deactivate Repeat (RPT)**
  - 3 **activate/deactivate display of CD info**

- 2 **CD**
  - 3 **copy CD to Jukebox**
    - 4 copy complete CD
    - 4 multiple selection
    - 4 current album
    - 4 current track
  - 3 **eject CD**
- 2 **USB**
  - 3 **copy USB to Jukebox**
    - 4 complete disc
    - 4 multiple selection
    - 4 current album
    - 4 current track
  - 3 **eject USB**
- 2 **JUKEBOX**
  - 3 **jukebox management**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

09 SCREEN MENU MAP

- 3 **jukebox configuration**
  - 4 hi-fi (320 kbps)
  - 4 high (192 kbps)
  - 4 normal (128 kbps)
- 3 **playlist management**
- 3 **delete jukebox data**
- 3 **Jukebox status**

1 TELEMATICS

- 2 **CALL**
  - 3 **call list**
  - 3 **dial**
  - 3 **directory**
  - 3 **mailbox**
  - 3 **services**
    - 4 customer contact centre
    - 4 CITROËN assistance
    - 4 CITROËN service
    - 4 messages received
- 2 **DIRECTORY**
  - 3 **managing directory files**
    - 4 consult or modify a file
    - 4 add a file
    - 4 delete a file
    - 4 delete all files
  - 3 **configure directory**
    - 4 select a directory
    - 4 name directory
    - 4 select starting directory
  - 3 **file transfer**
    - 4 exchange by infrared
      - 5 send all records
      - 5 send one record
      - 5 receive by infrared
    - 4 exchange with SIM card
      - 5 send all records to SIM
      - 5 send one record to SIM
      - 5 receive all SIM files
      - 5 receive a SIM file
    - 4 exchange with Bluetooth
- 2 **TEXT MESSAGES (SMS)**
  - 3 **read received text messages**
  - 3 **send a text message**
  - 3 **write a text message**
  - 3 **delete list of text messages**
- 2 **TELEPHONE FUNCTIONS**
  - 3 **network**
    - 4 network search mode

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- 5 automatic mode
- 5 manual mode
- 4 networks available
- 3 **length of calls**
- 4 reset
- 3 **manage PIN code**
- 4 activate/deactivate
- 4 save PIN code
- 4 modify PIN code
- 3 **call options**
- 4 configure calls
- 5 display my number
- 5 automatic reply after x ring(s)
- 4 ring options
- 5 for voice calls
- 5 for text messages (SMS)
- 6 text message ring
- 3 **calls diversion to mailbox n°**
- 3 **delete calls log**
- 2 **BLUETOOTH FUNCTIONS**
- 3 **activation mode**
- 4 deactivated
- 4 activated and visible
- 4 activated and not visible
- 3 **list of matched peripheral equipment**
- 3 **change the name of the audio/telephone**
- 3 **authentication code**
- 3 **phone book synchronisation mode**
- 4 no synchronisation
- 4 view telephone phone book
- 4 view SIM card phone book
- 4 view all phone books

1 CONFIGURATION

- 2 **DISPLAY CONFIGURATION**
- 3 **choose colour**
- 3 **adjust luminosity**
- 3 **set date and time**
- 3 **select units**
- 2 **SOUND**
- 3 **voice commands setting**
- 3 **speech synthesis setting**
- 4 guidance instructions volume
- 4 other message volume
- 4 select female/male voice
- 3 **activate/deactivate auxiliary source**
- 2 **SELECT LANGUAGE**
- 2 **DEFINE VEHICLE PARAMETERS***

* The parameters vary according to vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

09 SCREEN MENU MAP

1 VIDEO

2 ACTIVATE VIDEO MODE

2 VIDEO PARAMETERS

3 display formats

3 adjust luminosity

3 set colours

3 set contrasts

1 VEHICLE DIAGNOSTICS

2 ALERT LOG

2 STATUS OF FUNCTIONS*

2 RESET TYRE PRESS. DETEC. SYS.*

* The parameters vary according to the vehicle.

Press the MENU button for more than 2 seconds to access the following flow chart.

1 VOICE COMMANDS LIST

1 AUDIO/TELEPHONE DIAGNOSTICS

2 GPS COVERAGE

2 UNIT BACKUP POWER

2 UNIT DESCRIPTION

1 NAVIGATION DEMONSTRATION

1 SERVICES CONFIGURATION

Display short cuts version 8.2

Press the Music button several times in succession to access the following settings.

MUSICAL AMBIENCE

BASS

TREBLE

LOUDNESS CORRECTION

FR - RR BALANCE

LH - RH BALANCE

AUTO VOLUME CORRECTION

Each audio source (Radio, CD, MP3, Jukebox) has its own separate settings.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

The table below groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources (radio, CD...).	For optimum sound quality, the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source (radio, CD...).	Check that the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) are adapted to the sources listened to. It is advisable to set the AUDIO functions (Bass, Treble, Front-Rear Balance, Left-Right Balance) to the middle position, select the musical ambience "None" and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.
The CD is ejected automatically or is not played by the player.	The CD is inserted upside down, is unplayable, does not contain any audio data or contains an audio format which the player cannot play.	The CD is protected by an anti-pirating protection system which is not recognised by the audio equipment. - Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. - Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too damaged. - Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: consult the advice in the Audio section. - The audio equipment's CD player does not play DVDs. - Due to inadequate quality, certain recorded CDs will not be played by the audio system.
The CD player sound is poor.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio equipment settings (bass, treble, ambiences) are unsuitable.	Set the treble or bass level to 0, without selecting an ambience.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

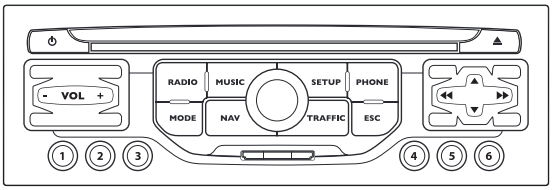
QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...)	An incorrect waveband is selected.	Press the BAND AST button to return to the waveband (AM, FM1, FM2, FMAST) on which the stations are stored.
The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling.	Activate the RDS function to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a CITROËN dealer.
Sound cut-outs of 1 to 2 seconds in radio mode.	During this brief sound cut-out, the RDS searches for any frequency permitting better reception of the station.	Deactivate the RDS function if the phenomenon is too frequent and always on the same route.
With the engine off, the audio equipment switches off after a few minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the audio equipment operating time depends on the battery charge. The switch-off is normal: the audio equipment switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging of the vehicle's battery.	Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.
TRAFFIC INFO is selected. However, certain traffic jams along the route are not indicated in real time.	On starting, it is several minutes before the system begins to receive the traffic information.	Wait until the traffic information is being received correctly (displaying of the traffic information symbols on the map).
	In certain countries, only major routes (motorways, ...) are listed for the traffic information.	This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the traffic information available.
The time taken to calculate a route sometimes seems longer than usual.	The performance of the system may slow down temporarily if a CD is being copied onto the Jukebox at the same time as a route is being calculated.	Wait until the CD has been copied or stop the copying before starting the guidance function.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Does the emergency call function work without a SIM card?	Certain national regulations impose the presence of a SIM card in order to make an emergency call.	Insert a valid SIM card in the slot on the system.
The altitude is not displayed.	On starting, the initialisation of the GPS may take up to 3 minutes to receive more than 4 satellites correctly.	Wait until the system has started up completely. Check that there is a GPS coverage of at least 4 satellites (long press on the MENU button, then select AUDIO/TELEPHONE DIAGNOSTICS, then GPS COVERAGE).
	Depending on the geographical environment (tunnel, ...) or the weather, the conditions of reception of the GPS signal may vary.	This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the conditions of reception of the GPS signal.
My SIM card is not recognised.	The system accepts 3.3 V SIM cards, the old 5 V and 1.8 V SIM cards are not recognised.	Contact your telephone operator.
The route is not calculated successfully.	The exclusion criteria may conflict with the current location (exclusion of toll roads on a motorway with tolls).	Check the exclusion criteria.
There is a long wait after inserting a CD.	When a new medium is inserted, the system reads a certain amount of data (folder, title, artist, etc.). This may take a few seconds.	This phenomenon is normal.
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the equipment may not be visible.	- Check that your telephone's Bluetooth function is switched on. - Check that your telephone is visible.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



MyWay

MULTIMEDIA AUDIO SYSTEM/BLUETOOTH TELEPHONE SATELLITE NAVIGATION SYSTEM FOR EUROPE BY SD CARD

The MyWay is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle.

For safety reasons, the driver must carry out operations which require prolonged attention while the vehicle is stationary.
When the engine is switched off and to prevent discharging of the battery, the MyWay switches off following the activation of the Energy Economy mode.

Certain functions described in this handbook will become available during the year.

CONTENTS

01	First steps	p.	276
02	Steering mounted controls	p.	277
03	General operation	p.	278
04	Navigation - Guidance	p.	281
05	Traffic information	p.	289
06	Radio	p.	291
07	Music media players	p.	292
08	Bluetooth telephone	p.	295
09	Configuration	p.	298
10	Screen menu map	p.	299
	Frequently asked questions	p.	303

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

01 FIRST STEPS

Engine not running:
- Short press: on/off.
- Long press: pause with CD play, mute for radio.

Engine running:
- Short press: pause with CD play, mute for radio.
- Long press: reinitialise the system.

Long press: audio settings: front/rear fader, left/right balance, bass/treble, musical ambience, loudness, automatic volume, reinitialise settings.

Access to the Radio Menu. Display the list of stations.

Access to the Music Menu. Display tracks.

Selection dial for the screen display and according to the menu.

Short press: contextual menu or confirm.

Long press: contextual menu specific to the list displayed.

Access to the "SETUP" menu.

Long press: GPS coverage and demonstration mode.

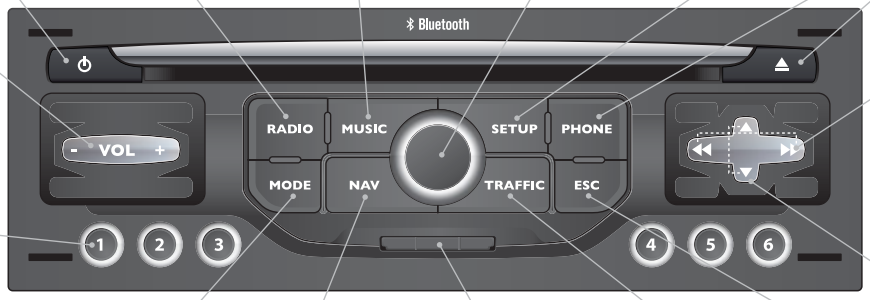
Access to the Phone Menu. Display the list of calls.

Adjust volume (each source is independent, including navigation messages and alerts).

Buttons 1 to 6:

Select a pre-set radio station.

Long press: pre-set the current station.



Eject CD.

Select previous/next radio station.

Select previous CD or MP3 track.

Select previous/next line in a list.

Select previous/next radio station in the list.

Select previous/next MP3 folder.

Select previous/next page in a list.

Access to the "MODE" menu.

Select successive display of:

Radio, Map, NAV (if navigation in progress), Telephone (if conversation in progress), Trip computer.

Long press: Black screen (DARK).

Access to the Navigation Menu. Display recent destinations.

Reader for navigation SD card only.

Access to the Traffic Menu. Display the current traffic alerts.

ESC: abandon current operation.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

02 STEERING MOUNTED CONTROLS

1. Volume increase.
2. Volume decrease.
3. Successive presses mute/restore the sound.
4. Rotation - associated with a pop-up.
   Radio - access the 6 stored stations: next or previous.
   Music players: previous/next track.
5. Radio: next station.
   Music players: next track.

1. Press.
   Repeat the current spoken navigation instruction.
2. Short press to make a telephone call.
   Pick up/Hang up.
   Access the telephone menu.
   Display the call list.
   Long press to reject an incoming call.
3. Personalisation.
   Short press to confirm the choice made using the dial.
4. Rotation.
   Scroll through the call list in the phone book.
   Personalisation selection.

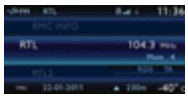
1. Short press: provides access to the menu according to the display on the screen.
2. Successive presses: provides access according to the current display on the screen.
   MAP/NAV (if navigation is in progress), TEL (if a conversation is in progress), RADIO or MEDIA in progress, Trip computer.
   Long press: switch to black screen - Dark (night driving).
   Touching a control restores the display.
3. ESC: abandon the current operation.
4. Rotation: selects the access to the short-cut menus according to the current display.
5. Confirms the choice displayed on the screen.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

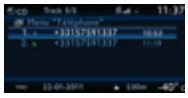
03 GENERAL OPERATION

Press the MODE button several times in succession for access to the following menus:

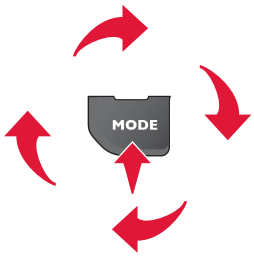
RADIO/MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS



TELEPHONE
(If a conversation is in progress)



TRIP COMPUTER



FULL SCREEN MAP

NAVIGATION
(If guidance is in progress)

SETUP:
system language*, date and time*, display, vehicle settings*, unit and system settings, "Demo mode".

* Available according to model.

TRAFFIC:
TMC information and messages.

For cleaning the screen, the use of a soft, non-abrasive cloth (spectacles cloth) is recommended, with no additional product.

For a detailed global view of the menus available, refer to the "Screen menu map" section.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

DISPLAY ACCORDING TO THE CONTEXT

A press on the OK dial gives access to short-cut menus according to the display on the screen.

NAVIGATION (IF GUIDANCE IS IN PROGRESS):

- 1 **Abort guidance**
- 1 **Repeat advice**
- 1 **Block road**
- 1 **Route info**
  - 2 Show destination
  - 2 Trip info
    - 3 Route type
    - 3 Avoid
    - 3 Satellites
  - 2 Zoom/Scroll
- 1 **Voice advice**
- 1 **Route options**

TRIP COMPUTER:

- 1 **Alert log**
- 1 **Status of functions**

TELEPHONE:

- 1 **End call**
- 1 **Hold call**
- 1 **Dial**
- 1 **DTMF-Tones**
- 1 **Private mode**
- 1 **Micro off**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

DISPLAY ACCORDING TO THE CONTEXT

MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS:

- 1 **Traffic info (TA)**
- 1 **Play options**
  - 2 Normal order
  - 2 Random track
  - 2 Repeat folder
  - 2 Scan
- 1 **Select music**

RADIO:

- 1 **In FM mode**
  - 2 Traffic info (TA)
  - 2 RDS
  - 2 Radiotext
  - 2 Regional prog.
  - 2 AM
- 1 **In AM mode**
  - 2 TA
  - 2 Refresh AM list
  - 2 FM

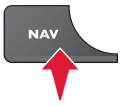
FULL SCREEN MAP:

- 1 **Abort guidance/Resume guidance**
- 1 **Set destination**
- 1 **POIs nearby**
- 1 **Position info**
- 1 **Map settings**
- 1 **Zoom/Scroll**

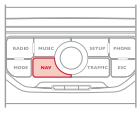
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SELECTING A DESTINATION

Insert the SD card in the front panel reader and leave it there to use the Navigation functions.
The navigation SD card data must not be modified.
Map data updates are available from CITROËN dealers.

1 

Press the NAV button.

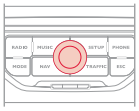


The list of the last 20 destinations appears under the Navigation Menu function.

2

Press the NAV button again or select the Navigation Menu function and press the dial to confirm.

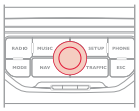
Navigation Menu



3

Select the "Destination input" function and press the dial to confirm.

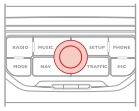
Destination input



4

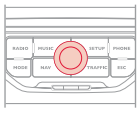
Select the "Address input" function and press the dial to confirm.

Address input



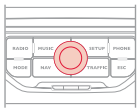
5

Once the country has been selected, turn the dial and select the town function. Press the dial to confirm.



6

Select the letters of the town one by one confirming each time by pressing the dial.

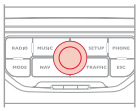


A pre-set list (by entering the first few letters) of the towns in the country selected can be accessed via the LIST button on the virtual keypad.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

7

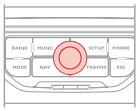
Turn the dial and select OK.
Press the dial to confirm.



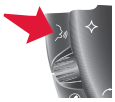
To speed up the process, the post code can be entered directly after selecting the "Postal code" function.
Use the virtual keypad to enter the letters and digits.

8

Repeat steps 5 to 7 for the "Street" and "House number" functions.



Select the "Save to address book" function to record the address entered in a directory file. Press the dial to confirm the selection.
MyWay allows up to 500 contact files to be recorded.

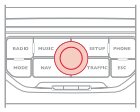


During guidance, pressing this button repeats the last guidance instruction.

9

Then select "Start route guidance" and the press the dial to confirm.

Start route guidance



Select the route type:
"Fast route", "Short route" or "Optimized route" and press the dial to confirm.
It is also possible to select a destination via "Choose from address book" or "Choose from last destinations".

Choose from address book **Choose from last destinations**

Map settings
You can zoom in/zoom out on the map using the dial.
It is possible to move the map or select its orientation via the short-cut menu of the FULL SCREEN MAP.
Press MODE until the map is displayed full screen. Press the dial then select "Map settings". Select "2.5D Map" or "2D Map" and in the latter case, select "North Up" or "Heading Up".

To clear a destination; from steps 1 to 3, select "Choose from last destinations".
A long press on one of the destinations displays a list of actions from which you can select:
Delete entry
Delete list

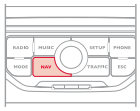
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SETTING AND NAVIGATING TO MY "HOME ADDRESS"

To be set as the "Home address", an address must first be entered in the address book, for example from "Destination input"/"Address input" then "Save to address book".

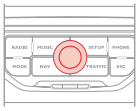
1 Press the NAV button twice to display the Navigation Menu.

Navigation Menu



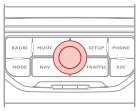
2 Select "Destination input" and confirm. Then select "Choose from address book" and confirm.

Destination input



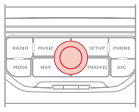
3 Select "Address book" and confirm. Then select "Search entry (complete address book)" and confirm.

Address book



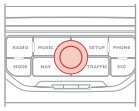
4 Select your home address and confirm. Then select "Edit entry" and confirm.

Edit entry



5 Select "Set as home address" and confirm to save.

Set as "Home address"



To start navigation towards "Home address", press NAV twice to display the Navigation Menu, select "Destination input" and confirm.

Then select "Navigate HOME" and confirm to start guidance.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ROUTE OPTIONS

The route selected by the MyWay system depends directly on the route options.
Changing these options may change the route completely.

1 Press the NAV button.

2 Press the NAV button again or select the Navigation Menu function and press the dial to confirm.

Navigation Menu

3 Select the "Route options" function and press the dial to confirm.

Route options

4 Select the "Route type" function and press the dial to confirm. This function allows you to change the route type.

Route type

5 Select the "Route dynamics" function.
This function gives access to the "Traffic independent" or "Semi-dynamic" options.

Route dynamics

6 Select the "Avoidance criteria" function. This function provides access to the AVOID options (motorways, toll roads, ferries).

Avoidance criteria

7 Turn the dial and select the "Recalculate" function to take into account the route options selected. Press the dial to confirm.

Recalculate

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ADDING A STOPOVER

Stopovers can be added to the route once the destination has been selected.

1 Press the NAV button.

2 Press the NAV button again or select the Navigation Menu function and press the dial to confirm.

Navigation Menu

3 Select the "Stopovers" function and press the dial to confirm.

Stopovers

4 Select the "Add stopover" function (5 stopovers maximum) and press the dial to confirm.

Add stopover

5 Enter a new address, for example.

Address input

6 Once the new address has been entered, select OK and press the dial to confirm.

OK

7 Select "Recalculate" and press the dial to confirm.

Recalculate

The stopover must be completed or deleted in order for the guidance to continue to the next destination. Otherwise, the MyWay will always return you to the previous stopover.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SEARCHING FOR POINTS OF INTEREST (POI)

The points of interest (POI) indicate all of the service locations in the vicinity (hotels, various businesses, airports...).

1 Press the NAV button.

2 Press the NAV button again or select the Navigation Menu function and press the dial to confirm.

Navigation Menu

3 Select the "POI search" function and press the dial to confirm.

POI search

4 Select the "POI nearby" function to search for POIs around the vehicle.

POI nearby

5 Select the "POI near destination" function to search for POIs near the point of arrival of the route.

POI near destination

6 Select the "POI in city" function to search for POIs in the city required. Select the country then enter the name of the city using the virtual keypad.

POI in city

A list of cities present in the country selected can be accessed via the LIST button on the virtual keypad.

7 Select the "POI in country" function to search for POIs in the country required.

POI in country

8 Select the "POI near route" function to search for POIs near the route.

POI near route

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

This icon appears when several POIs are grouped together in the same area. Zooming in on this icon shows details of the POIs.

LIST OF PRINCIPAL POINTS OF INTEREST (POI)

- Service station
- LPG station
- Garage
- CITROËN
- Motor racing circuit
- Covered car park
- Car park
- Rest area
- Hotel
- Restaurant
- Refreshment area
- Picnic area
- Cafeteria
- Airport
- Railway station
- Bus station
- Port
- Industrial estate
- Supermarket
- Bank
- Vending machine
- Tennis court
- Swimming pool
- Golf course
- Winter sports resort
- Theatre
- Cinema
- Theme parks
- Hospital
- Pharmacy
- Police station
- School
- Post office
- Museum
- Tourist information
- Automatic speed camera*
- Red light camera*
- Risk area*

* According to availability in the country.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

NAVIGATION SETTINGS

1 Press the NAV button.

2 Press the NAV button again or select the Navigation Menu function and press the dial to confirm.

Navigation Menu

3 Select the "Settings" function and press the dial to confirm.

Settings

4 Select the "Navi volume" function and turn the dial to set the volume of each voice synthesiser (traffic information, alert messages…).

Navi volume

To activate or deactivate vocal guidance, with guidance active and the map displayed in the screen, press the dial and then select or deselect "Voice advice".

Voice advice

The adjustment of the volume for the Risk Areas POIs is used only during the transmission of an alert.

5 Select the "POI categories on Map" function to select the POIs to be displayed on the map by default.

POI categories on Map

6 Select "Set parameters for risk areas" for access to the "Display on map", "Visual alert" and "Sound alert" functions.

Set parameters for risk areas

UPDATING POIs

The detailed procedure for updating POIs is available at the following internet address: citroen.navigation.com.
This requires an SDHC (High Capacity) compatible reader.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

05 TRAFFIC INFORMATION

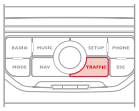
CONFIGURE THE FILTERING AND DISPLAY OF TMC MESSAGES

TMC (Traffic Message Channel) messages contain information on traffic and weather conditions, received in real time and transmitted to the driver in the form of audible announcements and symbols on the navigation map.

The navigation system can then suggest an alternative route to avoid a traffic problem.

1

Press the TRAFFIC button.

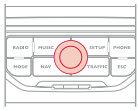


The list of TMC messages appears under the Traffic Menu sorted in order of proximity.

2

Press the TRAFFIC button again or select the Traffic Menu function and press the dial to confirm.

Traffic Menu



3

Select the filter of your choice:

Messages on route

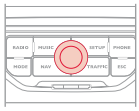
All warning messages

Only warnings on route

All messages

The messages appear on the map and on the list.

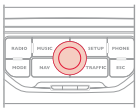
To exit, press ESC.



4

Select the "Geo. Filter" function and press the dial to confirm.

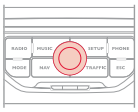
Geo. Filter



5

Then select the radius of the filter in miles (km) required in accordance with the route, press the dial to confirm.

When all of the messages on the route are selected, the addition of a geographical filter is recommended (within a radius of 3 miles (5 km) for example) to reduce the number of messages displayed on the map. The geographical filter follows the movement of the vehicle.



!

The filters are independent and their results are cumulative.

We recommend a filter on the route and a filter around the vehicle of:

- 2 miles (3 km) or 3 miles (5 km) for a region with heavy traffic,
- 6 miles (10 km) for a region with normal traffic,
- 30 miles (50 km) for long journeys (motorway).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

05 TRAFFIC INFORMATION

PRINCIPAL TMC SYMBOLS

1 Black and blue triangle: general information, for example:

- Weather reports
- Traffic reports
- Wind
- Fog
- Parking
- Snow/ice

2 Red and yellow triangle: traffic information, for example:

- Modified signage
- Narrow carriageway
- Slippery surface
- Accident
- Delay
- Roadworks
- Risk of explosion
- Road closed
- Demonstration
- Danger
- No entry
- Traffic jam

RECEIVING TA MESSAGES

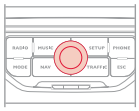
RDS TA - the station transmits TA messages.

RDS TA - the station does not transmit TA messages.

RDS - TA messages are not activated.

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station transmitting this type of message. When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, ...) is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal playback of the audio source resumes at the end of the transmission of the message.

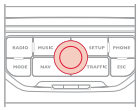
1 With the current audio source displayed on the screen, press the dial.



2 The shortcut menu for the source appears and gives access to:

TA

3 Select Traffic Announcements (TA) and press the dial to confirm and go to the associated settings.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

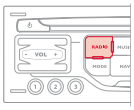
06 RADIO

SELECTING A STATION

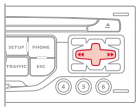
1

Press the RADIO button to display the list of stations received locally sorted in alphabetical order.

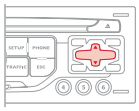
Select the station required by turning the dial and press to confirm.



While listening to the radio, press one of the buttons to select the previous or next station on the list.



A long press of one of the buttons starts the automatic search for a station with a lower or higher frequency.



Press one of the buttons on the numeric keypad for more than 2 seconds to store the current station.

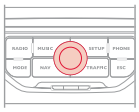
Press the button on the numeric keypad to recall the stored radio station.

The external environment (hill, building, tunnel, underground car park...) may interfere with the reception, including in RDS following mode. This phenomenon is a normal result of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not in any way indicate a failure of the audio equipment.

RDS - REGIONAL MODE

1

When the current radio station is displayed on the screen, press the dial.



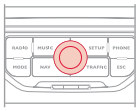
2

The radio source short-cuts menu appears and provides access to the following short-cuts:

- **TA**
- **RDS**
- **Radiotext**
- **Regional prog.**
- **AM**

3

Select the function required and press the dial to confirm to gain access to the corresponding settings.



RDS, if displayed, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

07 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

CD, MP3/WMA CD INFORMATION AND ADVICE

The MP3 format, an abbreviation of MPEG 1, 2 & 2.5 Audio Layer 3 and the WMA format, an abbreviation of Windows Media Audio and the property of Microsoft, are audio compression standards which permit the recording of several tens of music files on a single disc.

The MyWay will only play audio files with the extension ".mp3" with a speed of between 8 Kbps and 320 Kbps and the extension ".wma" with a speed of between 5 Kbps and 384 Kbps.

It also supports the VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.

No other type of file (.mp4, .m3u...) can be played.

In order to be able to play a recorded CDR or CDRW, when recording it is preferable to select the ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet standard.

If the disc is recorded in another format it may not be played correctly.

It is recommended that the same recording standard is always used for an individual disc, with as low a speed as possible (4x maximum) for optimum sound quality.

In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using special characters (e.g.: " ? ; ù) to avoid any play or display problems.

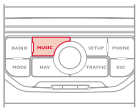
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

07 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

SELECTING/PLAYING MUSIC CD, MP3/WMA CD

1

Press the MUSIC button.



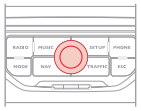
!

The list of tracks or MP3/WMA files appears under Music Menu.

2

Press the MUSIC button again or select the Music Menu function and press the dial to confirm.

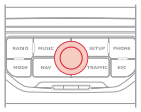
Music Menu



3

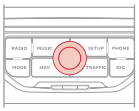
Select the "Select music" function and press the dial to confirm.

Select music

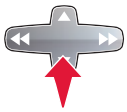


4

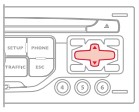
Select the music source required: CD, MP3/WMA CD. Press the dial to confirm. Play begins.



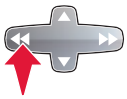
5



Press the up or down button to select the next/previous folder.

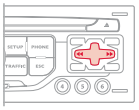


6



Press one of the buttons to select a music track.

Press and hold one of the buttons for fast forward or rewind play.



The playing and displaying of an MP3/WMA compilation may depend on the recording programme and/or the settings used. We recommend the ISO 9660 file standard.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

USING THE EXTERNAL INPUT (AUX)

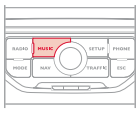
JACK/USB AUDIO CABLE NOT SUPPLIED

1 Connect the portable device (MP3/ WMA player…) to the auxiliary JACK socket or to the USB port, using a suitable audio cable.

2

Press the MUSIC button then press it again or select the Music Menu function and press the dial to confirm.

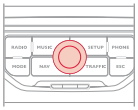
Music Menu



3

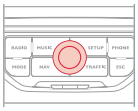
Select the "External device" function and press the dial to activate it.

External device



4

Select the AUX music source and press the dial to confirm. Play begins automatically.



! The display and management of the controls is via the portable device.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

08 BLUETOOTH TELEPHONE

PAIRING A TELEPHONE
FIRST CONNECTION

* The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth telephone used. Check the telephone manual and with your network provider for details of the services available to you.

!

For reasons of safety and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing the Bluetooth mobile telephone to the hands-free system of the MyWay must be carried out with the vehicle stationary. The ignition must be on.

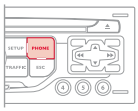
Visit www.citroen.co.uk for more information (compatibility, more help, ...).

1

Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function and ensure that it is "visible to all" (refer to the telephone instructions).

2

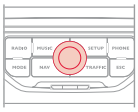
Press the PHONE button.



3

For a first connection, select "Search phone" and press the dial to confirm. Then select the name of the telephone.

Search phone



4

Enter the authentication code on the telephone. The code to be entered is displayed on the screen of the system.

Some telephones offer automatic reconnection of the telephone every time the ignition is switched on.

A message confirms the pairing.

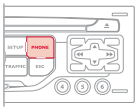
i

Pairing can also be started from the telephone (refer to the telephone instructions).

i

Once the telephone has been connected, MyWay can synchronise the address book and the call list. This synchronisation may take a few minutes*.

To change the telephone connected, press the PHONE button, then select Phone Menu and press the dial to confirm.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

08 BLUETOOTH TELEPHONE

CONNECTING A TELEPHONE

* The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth telephone used. Check the telephone manual and with your network provider for details of the services available to you.

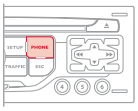
For reasons of safety and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing the Bluetooth mobile telephone to the hands-free system of the MyWay must be carried out with the vehicle stationary. The ignition must be on.

Visit www.citroen.co.uk for more information (compatibility, more help, ...).

1 Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function and ensure that it is "visible to all" (refer to the telephone instructions).
The last telephone connected is reconnected automatically.
A message confirms the connection.

2

Press the PHONE button.

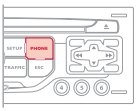


The list of telephones connected previously (4 maximum) appears on the multifunction screen. Select the telephone required for a new connection.

Once the telephone has been connected, MyWay can synchronise the address book and the call list. This synchronisation may take a few minutes*.

1

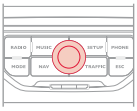
When a telephone is already connected, to change it press the PHONE button, then select Phone Menu and press the dial to confirm.



2

Select "Connect phone". Select the telephone and press to confirm.

Connect phone



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

08 BLUETOOTH TELEPHONE

RECEIVING A CALL

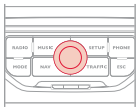
1

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display on the multifunction screen.

2

Select the "Yes" tab to accept or "No" to refuse and confirm by pressing the dial.

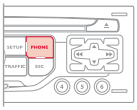
Yes No



3

To hang up, press the PHONE button or press the dial and select "End call" then confirm by pressing the dial.

End call

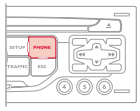


A short press on the steering mounted TEL button accepts the incoming call or ends the call in progress. A long press rejects the incoming call.

MAKING A CALL

1

Press the PHONE button.



The list of the last 20 calls made and received in the vehicle appears under Phone Menu. You can select a number and press the dial to make the call.

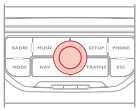
2

Select the Phone Menu function and press the dial to confirm.

Phone Menu

Select "Dial number", then dial the telephone number using the virtual keypad.

Dial number



It is also possible to select a number from the address book. You can select "Dial from address book". The MyWay can record up to 1 000 entries (telephone numbers).

Press the end of the steering mounted control for more than two seconds to gain access to the address book.

It is possible to make a call directly from the telephone; park the vehicle as a safety measure.

To delete a number, press the PHONE button then press and hold on a call number to display a list of actions including:
Delete entry
Delete list

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

09 CONFIGURATION

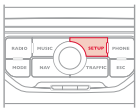
SETTING THE DATE AND TIME

The SETUP function gives access to the following options: System language, Date & Time, Display (Brightness, Colour, Map colour), Vehicle, Units, System.

! These settings must be entered again if the battery has been disconnected.

1

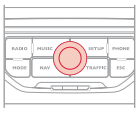
Press the SETUP button.



2

Select the "Date & Time" function and press the dial to confirm.

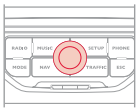
Date & Time

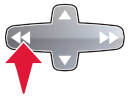


3

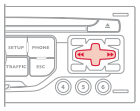
Select the "Set date & time" function and press the dial to confirm.

Set date & time



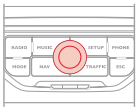
4 

Adjust the settings one by one using the direction arrows and confirm by means of the dial.



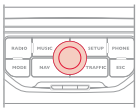
5

Select the "Date format" function and press the dial to confirm.



6

Confirm the format required using the dial.
Select the "Time format" function and press the dial to confirm.



Confirm the format required using the dial.
Pressing the SETUP button for more than 2 seconds gives access to:

Description of the unit

GPS coverage

Demo mode

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

10 SCREEN MENU MAP

MAIN FUNCTION

- OPTION A
  - option A1
  - option A2
- OPTION B...

"Traffic" Menu

- Messages on route
- Only warnings on route
- All warning messages
- All messages
- Geo. Filter
  - Within 2 miles (3 km)
  - Within 3 miles (5 km)
  - Within 6 miles (10 km)
  - Within 30 miles (50 km)
  - Within 60 miles (100 km)

"Music" Menu

- Select music
- Sound settings
  - Balance/Fader
  - Bass/Treble
  - Equalizer
    - Linear
    - Classic
    - Jazz
    - Rock/Pop
    - Techno
    - Vocal
  - Loudness
  - Speed dependent volume
  - Reset sound settings

"Radio" Menu

- Waveband
  - FM
  - AM
- Manual tune
- Sound settings
  - Balance/Fader
  - Bass/Treble
  - Equalizer
    - Linear

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- 4 Classic
- 4 Jazz
- 4 Rock/Pop
- 4 Techno
- 4 Vocal
- 3 **Loudness**
- 3 **Speed dependent volume**
- 3 **Reset sound settings**

NAV

1 "Navigation" Menu

- 2 **Abort guidance/Resume guidance**
- 2 **Destination input**
  - 3 **Enter new address**
    - 4 Country
    - 4 City
    - 4 Street
    - 4 House number
    - 4 Start route guidance
    - 4 Postal code
    - 4 Save to address book
    - 4 Intersection
    - 4 City district
    - 4 Geo position
    - 4 Map
  - 3 **Navigate HOME**
  - 3 **Choose from address book**
  - 3 **Choose from last destinations**
  - 3 **TMC station information**
  - 3 **Stopovers**
    - 4 Address input
    - 4 Navigate HOME
    - 4 Choose from address book
    - 4 Choose from last destinations
    - 3 **Rearrange route**
    - 3 **Replace stopover**
    - 3 **Delete stopover**
    - 3 **Recalculate**
      - 4 Fast route
      - 4 Short route
      - 4 Optimized route
  - 2 **POI search**
  - 3 **POI nearby**
  - 3 **POI near destination**
  - 3 **POI in city**
  - 3 **POI in country**
  - 3 **POI near route**
  - 2 **Route options**
  - 3 **Route type**
    - 4 Fast route
    - 4 Short route

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- 4 Optimized route
- 3 **Route dynamics**
  - 4 Traffic independent
  - 4 Semi-dynamic
- 3 **Avoidance criteria**
  - 4 Avoid motorways
  - 4 Avoid toll roads
  - 4 Avoid ferries
- 3 **Recalculate**
- 2 **Settings**
- 3 **Navi volume**
- 3 **POI categories on Map**
- 3 **Set parameters for risk areas**
  - 4 Display on map
  - 4 Visual alert
  - 4 Sound alert

PHONE

1 "Phone" Menu

- 2 **Dial number**
- 2 **Dial from address book**
- 2 **Call lists**
- 2 **Connect phone**
  - 3 **Search phone**
  - 3 **Phones connected**
    - 4 Disconnect phone
    - 4 Rename phone
    - 4 Delete pairing
    - 4 Delete all pairings
    - 4 Show details
- 2 **Settings**
  - 3 **Select ring tone**
  - 3 **Phone/Ring tone volume**
  - 3 **Enter mailbox number**

SETUP

1 "SETUP" menu

- 2 **System language***
  - 3 **Deutsch**
  - 3 **English**
  - 3 **Español**
  - 3 **Français**
  - 3 **Italiano**
  - 3 **Nederlands**
  - 3 **Polski**
  - 3 **Portuguese**
- 2 **Date & Time***
  - 3 **Set date & time**
  - 3 **Date format**
  - 3 **Time format**

* Available according to model.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- 2 **Display**
  - 3 **Brightness**
  - 3 **Colour**
    - 4 Pop titanium
    - 4 Toffee
    - 4 Blue steel
    - 4 Technogrey
    - 4 Dark blue
  - 3 **Map colour**
    - 4 Day mode for map
    - 4 Night mode for map
    - 4 Auto. Day/Night for map
- 2 **Vehicle****
  - 3 **Vehicle information**
    - 4 Alert log
    - 4 Status of functions
- 2 **Units**
  - 3 **Temperature**
    - 4 Celsius
    - 4 Fahrenheit
  - 3 **Metric/Imperial**
    - 4 Kilometres (Consumption: l/100)
    - 4 Kilometres (Consumption: km/l)
    - 4 Miles (Consumption: MPG)
- 2 **System**
  - 3 **Factory reset**
  - 3 **Software version**
  - 3 **Automatic scrolling**

** The parameter settings vary according to vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources (radio, CD...).	For optimum sound quality, the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source (radio, CD...).	Check that the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) are adapted to the sources listened to. It is advisable to set the AUDIO functions (Bass, Treble, Front-Rear Balance, Left-Right Balance) to the middle position, select the Linear musical ambience and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.
The CD is ejected automatically or is not played by the player.	The CD is inserted upside down, is unplayable, does not contain any audio data or contains an audio format which the player cannot play. The CD is protected by an anti-pirating protection system which is not recognised by the audio equipment.	- Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. - Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too damaged. - Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: consult the advice in the Audio section. - The audio equipment's CD player does not play DVDs. - Because of their quality level, certain writeable CDs will not be played by the audio system.
The CD player sound is poor.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio equipment settings (bass, treble, ambiences) are unsuitable.	Set the treble or bass level to 0, without selecting an ambience.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	An incorrect waveband is selected.	Press the BAND AST button to return to the waveband (AM, FM1, FM2, FMAST) on which the stations are stored.
The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling.	Activate the RDS function to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a CITROËN dealer.
Sound cut-outs of 1 to 2 seconds in radio mode.	During this brief sound cut-out, the RDS searches for any frequency permitting better reception of the station.	Deactivate the RDS function if the phenomenon is too frequent and always on the same route.
With the engine off, the audio equipment switches off after a few minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the audio equipment operating time depends on the battery charge. The switch-off is normal: the audio equipment switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging of the vehicle's battery.	Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.

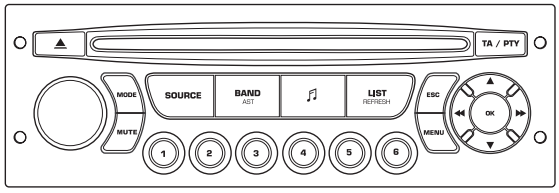
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
TA is selected. However, certain traffic jams along the route are not indicated in real time.	On starting, it is several minutes before the system begins to receive the traffic information.	Wait until the traffic information is being received correctly (displaying of the traffic information symbols on the map).
	In certain countries, only major routes (motorways...) are listed for the traffic information.	This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the traffic information available.
I receive a speed camera alert for a camera which is not on my route.	The system announces all speed cameras located in a conical zone forward of the vehicle. It may detect speed cameras on nearby or parallel roads.	Zoom the map to view the exact position of the speed camera.
The audible speed camera alert is not working.	Audible alerts are not active.	Activate audible alerts in Navigation Menu, Settings, Set parameters for risk areas.
	The alert volume level is set to minimum.	Increase the speed camera alert volume.
The altitude is not displayed.	On starting, the initialisation of the GPS may take up to 3 minutes to receive more than 3 satellites correctly.	Wait until the system has started up completely. Check that there is a GPS coverage of at least 3 satellites (long press on the SETUP button, then select GPS coverage).
	Depending on the geographical environment (tunnel...) or the weather, the conditions of reception of the GPS signal may vary.	This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the conditions of reception of the GPS signal.
The route is not calculated successfully.	The exclusion criteria may conflict with the current location (exclusion of toll roads on a motorway with tolls).	Check the exclusion criteria.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
There is a long waiting time after inserting a CD.	When a new medium is inserted, the system reads a certain amount of data (directory, title, artist, etc.). This may take a few seconds.	This phenomenon is normal.
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be deactivated or the equipment may not be visible.	- Check that your telephone's Bluetooth function is activated. - Check that your telephone is visible.
A telephone connected by Bluetooth is inaudible.	The volume level depends on both the system and the telephone.	Increase the MyWay volume setting, possibly to maximum, and increase the telephone volume level if necessary.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Audio System

AUDIO SYSTEM/BLUETOOTH

Your Audio system is coded in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle.

For safety reasons, the driver must carry out operations which require prolonged attention while the vehicle is stationary.

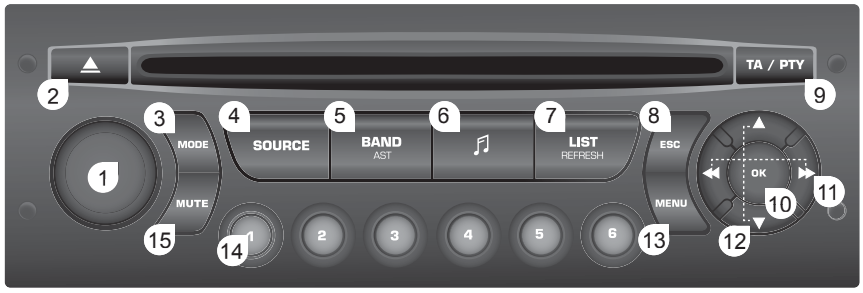
When the engine is switched off and to prevent discharging of the battery, the audio equipment may switch off after a few minutes.

CONTENTS

01 First steps p. 308
02 Steering mounted controls p. 309
03 Main menu p. 310
04 Audio p. 311
05 USB Box p. 314
06 Bluetooth functions p. 317
07 Configuration p. 320
08 Screen menu map p. 322
Frequently asked questions p. 327

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

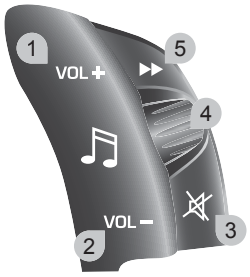
01 FIRST STEPS



1. On/Off and volume adjustment.
2. CD eject.
3. Selection of the display on the screen from the modes:
   Audio (AUDIO), Trip Computer (TRIP) and Telephone (TEL) functions.
4. Selection of source:
   radio, audio CD/MP3 CD, USB, auxiliary connection, Streaming.
5. Selection of FM1, FM2, FMast and AM wavebands.
6. Setting audio options: front/rear balance, left/right balance, loudness, sound ambience.
7. Display the list of local stations, the tracks on the CD or the MP3 folders.
8. Abandon current operation.
9. TA (Traffic Announcement) function on/off.
   Long press: access to the PTY (Types of radio programme) mode.
10. Confirmation.
11. Automatic search for a lower/higher frequency.
    Selection of previous/next CD, MP3 or USB track.
12. Selection of lower/higher radio frequency.
    Selection of previous/next CD.
    Selection of previous/next MP3 folder.
    Selection of previous/next USB equipment folder/genre/artist/playlist.
13. Display main menu.
14. Buttons 1 to 6:
    Selection of a stored radio station.
    Long press: storing of a station.
15. The MUTE button cuts off or restores the sound.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

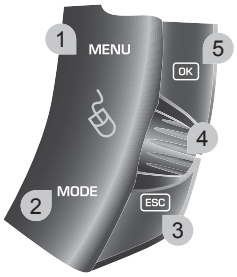
02 STEERING MOUNTED CONTROLS



1. Volume increase.
2. Volume decrease.
3. Mute.
4. RADIO:
   selection of the previous or next stored station.
   CD/MP3/USB:
   selection of the previous or next directory.
   CD CHANGER: selection of the previous or next CD.
5. RADIO: automatic search for a higher frequency.
   CD/MP3/CD CHANGER/USB:
   selection of the next track.
   CD/MP3/CD CHANGER:
   continuous press: fast forwards play.

If your vehicle is fitted with the Bluetooth system:

1. Press: activation of telephone voice recognition (if the telephone offers this function).
2. Press: displays the phone book, of the call list.



1. Displays the main screen.
2. Selection of the type of information displayed on the right-hand side of the screen for the monochrome screen A.
3. Abandon the operation in progress
   and return to the previous display.
4. Navigation through the menus.
5. Confirmation of the function selected.
   If your vehicle is fitted with the Bluetooth system: pick up an incoming call or hang up a call which is in progress.

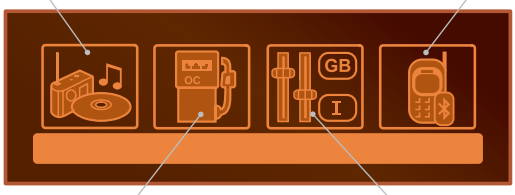
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

03 MAIN MENU

AUDIO FUNCTIONS:
radio, CD, USB, options.

TELEPHONE:
Bluetooth hands-free, pairing, management of a call.

> MONOCHROME SCREEN C



TRIP COMPUTER:
entering of distances, alerts, status of functions.

PERSONALISATION-CONFIGURATION:
vehicle parameters, display, languages.

> MONOCHROME SCREEN A

For a detailed global view of the menus available, refer to the "Screen menu map" section.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

04 AUDIO

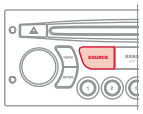
The external environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, ...) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This is a normal effect of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not indicate any failure of the audio system.

RADIO

SELECTING A STATION

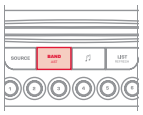
1

Press the SOURCE button several times in succession and select the radio.



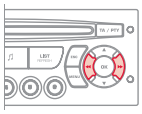
2

Press the BAND AST button to select a waveband: FM1, FM2, FMast, AM.



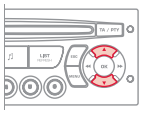
3

Briefly press one of the buttons to carry out an automatic search of the radio stations.



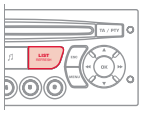
4

Press one of the buttons to carry out a manual search up/down for radio frequencies.



Press the LIST REFRESH button to display the list of stations received locally (30 stations maximum).

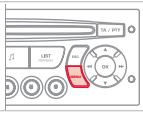
To update this list, press for more than two seconds.



RDS

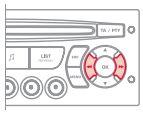
1

Press the MENU button.



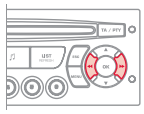
2

Select AUDIO FUNCTIONS then press OK.



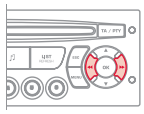
3

Select the FM WAVEBAND PREFERENCES function then press OK.



4

Select ACTIVATE RDS then press OK. RDS appears on the screen.



In radio mode, press OK directly to activate/deactivate RDS mode.

The RDS, if displayed, enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. Under conditions of very weak reception, the system may change to a regional station.

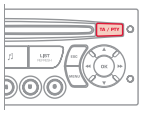
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

RECEIVING TA MESSAGES

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station transmitting this type of message. When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, ...) is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal playback of the audio source resumes at the end of the transmission of the message.

1

Press the TA button to activate or deactivate traffic messages.



CD
PLAYING A CD

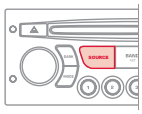
Insert circular compact discs only.

Some anti-pirating systems, on original discs or CDs copied using a personal recorder, may cause faults which are no reflection on the quality of the original player.

Without pressing the EJECT button, insert a CD in the player, play begins automatically.

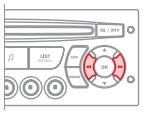
1

To play a disc which has already been inserted, press the SOURCE button several times in succession and select CD.



2

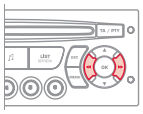
Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.



Press the LIST REFRESH button to display the list of tracks on the CD.

3

Press and hold one of the buttons for fast forward or backward.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

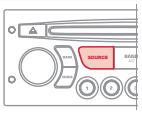
MP3 CD
PLAYING AN MP3 COMPILATION

Insert an MP3 compilation in the player.
The audio equipment searches for all of the music tracks, which may take anything between a few seconds and several tens of seconds, before play begins.

On a single disc, the CD player can read up to 255 MP3 files spread over 8 folder levels. However, it is advisable to keep to a limit of two levels to reduce the access time before the CD is played.
While the CD is being played, the folder structure is not followed.
All of the files are displayed on a single level.

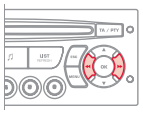
1

To play a disc which has already been inserted, press the SOURCE button several times in succession and select CD.



2

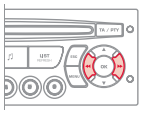
Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.



Press the LIST REFRESH button to display the list of directories of the MP3 compilation.

3

Press and hold one of the buttons for fast forward or backward play.



MP3 CD
INFORMATION AND ADVICE

The MP3 format, an abbreviation of MPEG 1.2 & 2.5 Audio Layer 3, is an audio compression standard which permits the recording of several tens of music files on a single disc.

In order to be able to play a recorded CDR or CDRW, when recording, the ISO 9660 level 1.2 or Joliet file format is recommended.
If the disc is recorded in another format, it may not be played correctly.
It is recommended that the same recording format is always used for an individual disc, with as low a speed as possible (4x maximum) for optimum sound quality.
In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet format is recommended.

The audio system will only play files with the extension ".mp3" with a sampling rate of 22.05 KHz or 44.1 KHz. No other type of file (.wma, .mp4, .m3u...) can be played.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters without using special characters (e.g. " ? ; ù) to avoid any playing or displaying problems.

Empty CDs are not recognised and may damage the system.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

05 USB BOX

USING THE USB BOX

The list of compatible equipment and the compression rates supported are available from CITROËN dealers.

1

This unit consists of a USB port and an auxiliary Jack socket*. The audio files are transmitted from a portable device - digital player or a USB memory stick - to your Audio system and heard via the vehicle's speakers.

2

USB memory stick (1.1, 1.2 and 2.0) or Apple® player of generation 5 or later:

- USB memory sticks should be formatted FAT or FAT 32 (NTFS not supported),
- the Apple® player lead is essential,
- navigation through the file database is also possible by means of the steering mounted controls.

3

Other Apple® players of earlier generations and players using the MTP protocol*:

- play via Jack-Jack lead only (not supplied),
- navigation through the file database is from the portable device.

CONNECTING A USB MEMORY STICK

1

Connect the memory stick to the port, directly or using a lead. If the audio equipment is switched on, the USB source is detected as soon as it is connected. Play begins automatically after a delay which depends on the capacity of the USB memory stick.

The file formats supported are .mp3 (mpeg1 layer 3 only), .wma (standard 9 only, 128 kbits/sec compression), .wav and .ogg.

Certain playlist formats are supported (m3u, ...)

On reconnection of the previous memory stick used, play is resumed automatically with the last track played.

!

The system puts together playlists (temporary memory) created over a period which depends on the capacity of the USB device.

The other sources are available during this time.

The playlists are updated each time the ignition is switched off or each time a USB memory stick is connected.

When connecting for the first time, the classification suggested is by folder. When you reconnect, the classification selected previously is retained.

* According to vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

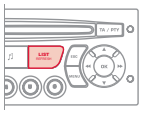
USING THE USB PORT

2

Press and hold LIST to display the different classifications.

Select by Folder/Artist/Genre/Playlist, press OK to select the classification required, then press OK again to confirm.

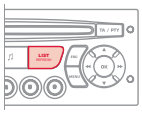
- by Folder: all folders containing audio files recognised on the peripheral device.
- by Artist: all of the artist names defined in the ID3 Tags, classified in alphabetical order.
- by Genre: all of the genres defined in the ID3 Tags.
- by Playlist: in accordance with the playlists recorded on the USB device.



Press LIST briefly to display the previously selected classification.

Navigate through the list using the left/right and up/down buttons.

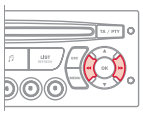
Confirm the selection by pressing OK.



3

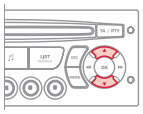
Press one of these buttons to gain access to the previous/next track on the classification list currently being played.

Press and hold one of the buttons for fast forward or backward play.



4

Press one of these buttons to gain access to the previous/next Genre, Folder, Artist or Playlist on the classification list currently being played.



CONNECTING AN APPLE® PLAYER VIA THE USB PORT

1

The lists available are Artist, Genre and Playlist (as defined in the Apple® player).

Selection and Navigation are described in steps 1 to 4 above.

!

Do not connect a hard disk or USB connection device other than audio equipment to the USB port. This could damage your installation.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

05 USB BOX

USING THE AUXILIARY INPUT (AUX)

JACK socket or USB port (according to vehicle)

The auxiliary input, JACK or USB, allows the connection of a portable device (MP3 player...).

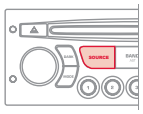
Do not connect a device to both the JACK socket and the USB port at the same time.

1

Connect the portable device (MP3 player…) to the JACK socket or to the USB port, using a suitable cable (not supplied).

2

Press the SOURCE button several times in succession and select AUX.



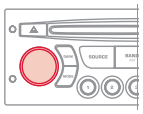
ADJUSTING THE VOLUME OF THE AUXILIARY SOURCE

1

First adjust the volume of your portable device.

2

Then adjust the volume of your audio system.



The display and control is via the portable device.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

06 BLUETOOTH FUNCTIONS

BLUETOOTH TELEPHONE

SCREEN C
(Available according to model and version)

The services offered depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth equipment used.
Consult your telephone's manual and your operator to find out which services are available to you.

PAIRING A TELEPHONE/FIRST CONNECTION

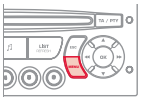
! For safety reasons and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing of the Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio equipment must be carried out with the vehicle stationary and the ignition on.

Go to www.citroen.co.uk for more information (compatibility, more help, ...).

1 Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration.

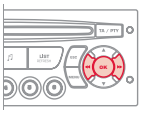
2

Press the MENU button.



3

In the menu, select:
- Bluetooth telephone function - Audio
- Bluetooth configuration
- Perform a Bluetooth search



4 A window is displayed with a message that a search is in progress.

5 The first 4 telephones recognised are displayed in this window.

! The TELEPHONE menu permits access to the following functions in particular: Directory*, Call list, Pairing management.

* If your telephone is fully compatible.

6 Select the telephone to be connected from the list. Only one telephone can be connected at a time.

7 A virtual keypad is displayed in the screen: enter a code with at least 4 digits.
Confirm by pressing OK.

8 A message is displayed in the screen of the telephone chosen. To accept the pairing, enter the same code on the telephone, then confirm with OK.

If pairing fails, the number of attempts is not limited.

9 A message that the pairing has been successful appears in the screen.

i The automatic connection authorised is only active after the telephone has been configured.
The directory and the call list can be accessed after the synchronisation period.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

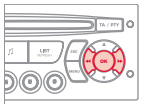
06 BLUETOOTH FUNCTIONS

RECEIVING A CALL

1 An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the vehicle's screen.

2

Select the YES tab on the display using the buttons and confirm by pressing OK.



Press this button to accept the call.

MAKING A CALL

1 From the Bluetooth telephone function Audio menu, select Manage the telephone call then Call, Call list or Directory.

2 Press this button for more than two seconds for access to your directory, then navigate with the thumb wheel.

Or

To dial a number, use your telephone's keypad, with the vehicle stationary.

ENDING A CALL

1 During a call, press this button for more than 2 seconds.

Confirm with OK to end the call.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

BLUETOOTH AUDIO STREAMING*

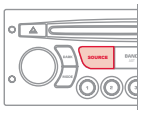
! Wireless transmission of the telephone's music files via the audio equipment. The telephone must be able to manage the appropriate Bluetooth profiles (Profiles A2DP/AVRCP).

1 Initiate the pairing between the telephone and the vehicle. This pairing can be initiated from the vehicle's telephone function menu or via the telephone's keypad. See steps 1 to 9 on the previous pages. During the pairing phase, the vehicle must be stationary with the key in the ignition.

2 Select the telephone to be connected from the telephone function menu.
The audio system connects to a newly paired telephone automatically.

3

Activate the streaming source by pressing the SOURCE button**.
The tracks to be played can be controlled as usual via the buttons on the audio system control panel and the steering mounted controls***.
The contextual information can be displayed on the screen.

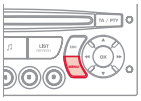
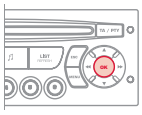
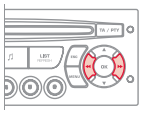
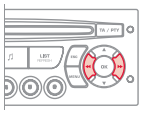
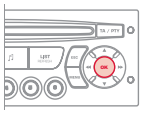
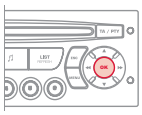
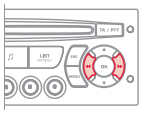
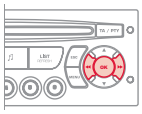


* Depending on the compatibility of the telephone.
** In certain cases, playing of the Audio files must be initiated from the keypad.
*** If the telephone supports the function.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SETTING THE DATE AND TIME

SCREEN A

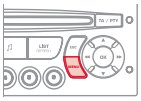
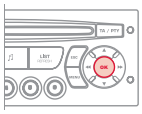
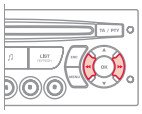
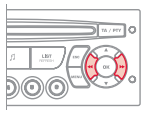
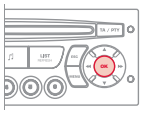
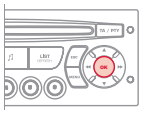
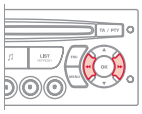
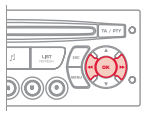
1		Press the MENU button.		5	Press to confirm the selection.	
2		Using the arrows, select DISPLAY CONFIGURATION.		6	Adjust the setting.	
3		Press to confirm the selection.		7	Press to confirm the selection.	
4		Using the arrows, select YEAR.		8	Start again from step 1 then set MONTH, DAY, HOUR, MINUTES.	

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

07 CONFIGURATION

SETTING THE DATE AND TIME

SCREEN C

1		Press the MENU button.		5		Press to confirm the selection.	
2		Using the arrows, select PERSONALISATION CONFIGURATION.		6		Using the arrows, select ADJUST DATE AND TIME.	
3		Press to confirm the selection.		7		Press to confirm the selection.	
4		Using the arrows, select DISPLAY CONFIGURATION.		8		Adjust the settings one by one confirming by pressing the OK button. Next select the OK tab on the screen then confirm.	

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

MONOCHROME A

MAIN FUNCTION

- OPTION A
  - OPTION A1
  - OPTION A2
- OPTION B...

RADIO-CD

- RDS SEARCH
- REG MODE
- CD REPEAT
- RANDOM PLAY

VEHICLE CONFIG*

- REV WIPE ACT
- GUIDE LAMPS

* The parameters vary according to vehicle.

OPTIONS

- DIAGNOSTICS
  - CONSULT
  - ABANDON

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

08 SCREEN MENU MAP

1 UNITS

- 2 TEMPERATURE: °CELSIUS/°FAHRENHEIT
- 2 FUEL CONSUMPTION: KM/L - L/100 - MPG

1 DISPLAY ADJUST

- 2 YEAR
- 2 MONTH
- 2 DATE
- 2 HOUR
- 2 MINUTES
- 2 12 H/24 H MODE

1 LANGUAGE

- 2 FRANCAIS
- 2 ITALIANO
- 2 NEDERLANDS
- 2 PORTUGUES
- 2 PORTUGUES-BRASIL
- 2 DEUTSCH
- 2 ENGLISH
- 2 ESPANOL

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

MONOCHROME C

Press the OK dial for access to short-cut menus according to the display on the screen:

RADIO

1 activate/deactivate RDS

1 activate/deactivate REG mode

1 activate/deactivate radiotext

CD/MP3 CD

1 activate/deactivate Intro

1 activate/deactivate track repeat (the entire current CD for CD, the entire current folder for MP3 CD)

1 activate/deactivate random play (the entire current CD for CD, the entire current folder for MP3 CD)

USB

1 activate/deactivate track repeat (of the current folder/artist/genre/playlist)

1 activate/deactivate random play (of the current folder/artist/genre/playlist)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

MONOCHROME C

Pressing the MENU button displays:

AUDIO FUNCTIONS

- 1 **AUDIO FUNCTIONS**
  - 2 **FM BAND PREFERENCES**
    - 3 **alternative frequencies (RDS)**
      - 4 activate/deactivate
    - 3 **regional mode (REG)**
      - 4 activate/deactivate
    - 3 **radio-text information (RDTXT)**
      - 4 activate/deactivate
  - 2 **PLAY MODES**
    - 3 **album repeat (RPT)**
      - 4 activate/deactivate
    - 3 **track random play (RDM)**
      - 4 activate/deactivate

TRIP COMPUTER

- 1 **TRIP COMPUTER**
  - 2 **ENTER DISTANCE TO DESTINATION**
    - 3 **Distance: x miles**
  - 2 **ALERT LOG**
    - 3 **Diagnostics**
  - 2 **STATUS OF THE FUNCTIONS***
    - 3 **Functions activated or deactivated**

* The parameters vary according to vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

08 SCREEN MENU MAP

1 PERSONALISATION-CONFIGURATION

- 2 **DEFINE THE VEHICLE PARAMETERS***
- 2 **DISPLAY CONFIGURATION**
  - 3 **video brightness adjustment**
    - 4 normal video
    - 4 inverse video
    - 4 brightness (- +) adjustment
  - 3 **date and time adjustment**
    - 4 day/month/year adjustment
    - 4 hour/minute adjustment
    - 4 choice of 12 h/24 h mode
  - 3 **choice of units**
    - 4 l/100 km - mpg - km/l
    - 4 °Celsius/°Fahrenheit
- 2 **CHOICE OF LANGUAGE**

1 BLUETOOTH TELEPHONE

- 2 **Bluetooth configuration**
  - 3 **Connect/Disconnect a device**
  - 3 **Telephone function**
  - 3 **Audio Streaming function**
    - 4 Consult the paired device
    - 4 Delete a paired device
    - 4 Perform a Bluetooth search
- 2 **Call**
  - 3 **Calls list**
    - 4 Directory
- 2 **Manage the telephone call**
  - 3 **Terminate the current call**
  - 3 **Activate private mode**

* The parameters vary according to vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

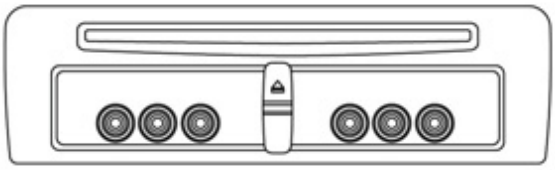
FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources (radio, CD...).	For optimum sound quality, the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source (radio, CD...).	Check that the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) are adapted to the sources listened to. It is advisable to set the AUDIO functions (Bass, Treble, Front-Rear Balance, Left-Right Balance) to the middle position, select the musical ambience "None" and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.
The CD is ejected automatically or is not played by the player.	The CD is inserted upside down, is unplayable, does not contain any audio data or contains an audio format which the player cannot play. The CD is protected by an anti-pirating protection system which is not recognised by the audio equipment.	- Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. - Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too damaged. - Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: consult the advice in the "Audio" section. - The audio equipment's CD player does not play DVDs. - Due to their quality level, certain writeable CDs will not be played by the audio system.
The message "USB peripheral error" is displayed on the screen.	The battery of the peripheral may not be sufficiently charged.	Recharge the battery of the peripheral device.
The Bluetooth connection is cut.	The USB memory stick is not recognised. The memory stick may be corrupt.	Reformat the memory stick.
The CD player sound is poor.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio equipment settings (bass, treble, ambiences) are unsuitable.	Set the treble or bass level to 0, without selecting an ambience.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	An incorrect waveband is selected.	Press the BAND AST button to return to the waveband (AM, FM1, FM2, FMAST) on which the stations are stored.
The traffic announcement (TA) is displayed. I do not receive any traffic information.	The radio station is not part of the regional traffic information network.	Tune to a radio station which broadcasts traffic information.
The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling.	Activate the RDS function to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a CITROËN dealer.
Sound cut-outs of 1 to 2 seconds in radio mode.	During this brief sound cut-out, the RDS searches for any frequency permitting better reception of the station.	Deactivate the RDS function if the phenomenon is too frequent and always on the same route.
With the engine off, the audio equipment switches off after a few minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the audio equipment operating time depends on the battery charge. The switch-off is normal: the audio equipment switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging of the vehicle's battery.	Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.
The message "the audio system is overheated" appears on the display.	In order to protect the installation if the surrounding temperature is too high, the audio equipment switches to an automatic thermal protection mode leading to a reduction of the volume or stopping of the playing of the CD.	Switch the audio system off for a few minutes to allow the system to cool.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



VIDEO PACK

DVD/AUDIO CD/MP3 PLAYER

For reasons of safety, the driver should only carry out operations which require prolonged attention while the vehicle is stationary.

The player is compatible with the following formats: DVD-R, DVD+R, DVD+RW, CD-R, CD-RW, VCD and SVCD.

Using the AUX1 and AUX2 inputs, this pack permits the connection of auxiliary systems (camcorder, games console, etc.).

The audio equipment only plays audio files with the extension ".mp3" with a sampling rate of 32 KHz to 48 KHz.

All of the functions of the video pack are described in the separate manual supplied with your vehicle.

CONTENTS

01 First steps p. 330

02 Configuration p. 332

03 Basic functions p. 333

04 Screen menu map p. 335

Frequently asked questions p. 336

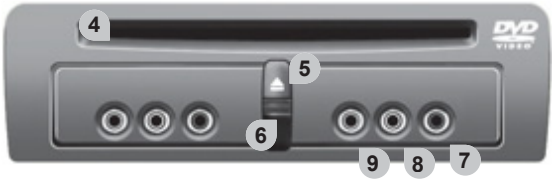
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

01 FIRST STEPS

MONITORS AND DVD/CD PLAYER

The monitors are located in the tops of the front seats.

The DVD/CD player is located on the centre console.



1. Monitor positioning handles.
2. Folding and pivoting TFT/LCD screen.
3. Infra-red cell.
4. DVD/CD player opening provided for the disc.
5. On/Off.
   DVD/CD eject.
6. LED:
   On green: player in operation.
   Flashing: receiving information or ejecting the disc.
7. AV1 AUDIO input.
8. AV2 AUDIO input.
9. VIDEO input.

INFRA-RED HEADPHONES

! The headphones are supplied with the video pack.
The presence of an object between the infra-red cell on the monitor and the headphones may result in a reduction in the sound quality.

Supply: 2 batteries R03/AAA 1.5 V.

1. 2 channel stereo.
2. On/Off.
3. Volume adjustment.

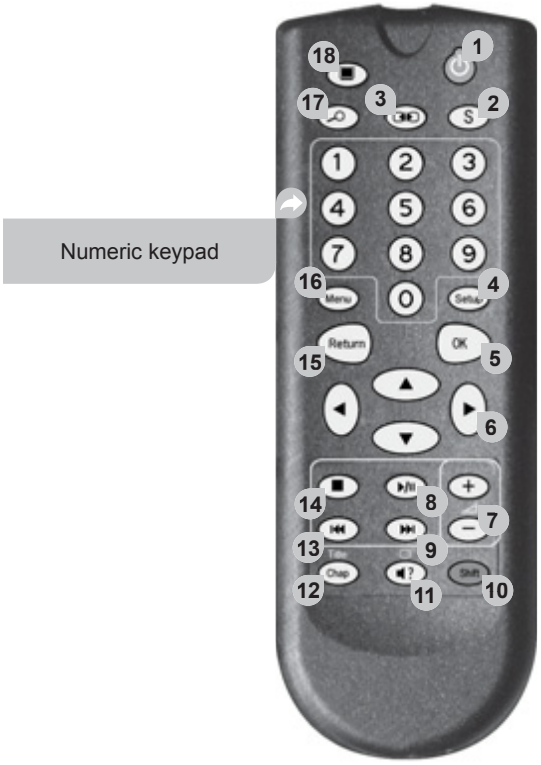
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

01 FIRST STEPS

REMOTE CONTROL

1. Power On/Off, Eject.
2. Selection of the source from DVD, audio CD and AUX.
3. Change screen.
4. DVD screen adjustments (brightness, contrast, …).
5. Selection confirmation.
6. Fast forward/backward.
   In the menus: move the cursor left/right, up/down.
7. Volume increase/decrease.
8. Play/Pause.
9. Next chapter.
10. SHIFT: activation of the yellow buttons.
11. Selection of the audio language.
    With SHIFT: selection of the subtitle language.
12. Change chapter.
    With SHIFT: change title.
13. Previous chapter.
14. Stop play.
15. RETURN:
    Short press: return to the previous menu.
    Long press: return to the main menu.
16. Display the main DVD menu.
17. ZOOM: Selection of different image formats.
18. Display/mask the screen.

Power: 2 batteries R03/AAA 1.5 V.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

02 CONFIGURATION

SETUP MENU

1 Press the SETUP button.

2 The "Settings" menu appears on the screen: "Video settings", "Languages", "Users", "Default settings".
Select the options using the ▲ and ▼ buttons.

3 Press the OK button to confirm your choice.

VIDEO SETTINGS

1 Press the SETUP button. The "Settings" menu appears on the screen.

2 Select the "Video settings" menu using the ▲ and ▼ buttons.

3 The "Video settings" menu appears on the screen: "Brightness", "Contrast", "Colour", "Back-lighting".

4 Select the input required using the ▲ and ▼ buttons.

5 Press the OK button to confirm your choice.
The setting is saved.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SETTING UP THE MONITORS

1

Release the table using the button and tilt it down.

2

Using the positioning handles, extract the monitor from the casing.

3

Pivot the monitor upwards until it is in contact with the upper part of the seat.

A notch locks it in position.

!

The monitor is not a touch screen.

Do not press directly on the surface of the monitor, this may damage the LCD screen.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

VIDEO PACK ON/OFF

1 To switch on the system, switch on the vehicle's ignition.

2 Press the POWER/EJECT button on the DVD/CD player or on the remote control.

! When the ignition is off, the video pack will switch off automatically after approximately ten minutes to avoid discharging the battery.

LOADING/EJECTING A DVD/CD

1 To load a disc, insert it carefully, printed face uppermost, until it is fully inserted.

2 Play begins automatically.

3 Press the POWER/EJECT button on the DVD/CD player or remote control.

4 Remove the disc carefully.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

04 SCREEN MENU MAP

1 SETTINGS

1 VIDEO SETTINGS

- 2 BRIGHTNESS
- 2 CONTRAST
- 2 COLOUR
- 2 BACK-LIGHTING

1 LANGUAGES

- 2 AUDIO
- 2 SUBTITLES
- 2 SETTINGS

1 USERS

- 2 USER 1
- 2 USER 2
- 2 USER 3

1 DEFAULT SETTINGS

- 2 ARE YOU SURE?
  - 3 YES
  - 3 NO

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

The table below groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning the video pack.

QUESTION	SOLUTION
The player does not start.	- Check the vehicle's fuses.
The player does not react to pressing of the remote control buttons.	- The remote control batteries are flat. Replace them. - The remote control sensor is hampered by objects or is dirty. Remove all objects on the remote control receiver or clean the surface using a damp cloth. - The video pack has overheated. Let it cool for a few minutes.
Image or sound interference while playing a DVD. The image remains frozen during play.	The player cannot read the disc. The disc may be damaged or dirty.
The player does not play the disc inserted.	- The format of the disc does not correspond to the specifications of the player. - If it is cold, condensation may have formed on the laser. Wait approximately 5 minutes to allow the humidity to evaporate.
When a DVD/VCD/SVCD is played, the image is of poor quality.	- Remove the disc. - Using the SETUP button, adjust the brightness and insert the disc again.
No image is displayed on the monitor.	- Press the SOURCE button until the image appears. - Press the SCREEN ON/OFF button.
There is no sound in the audio headphones.	- Increase the volume using the VOLUME +/- buttons on the remote control or using the dial on the headphones. - Check that the correct channel is selected on the headphones. - Press the SOURCE button until the sound arrives. - Replace the headphone batteries.
The start-up screen does not appear following ejection of the disc.	- Insert another disc. - Switch the system off and then on again.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

VISUAL SEARCH

EXTERIOR

Remote control key..... 78-83
- opening/closing
- anti-theft protection
- guide-me-home lighting
- starting
- battery

Accessories 211-212
Panoramic sunroof 91
Roof bars 210

Very cold climate screen..... 210
Exterior lighting controls 94-97
Headlamp adjustment..... 98
Directional lighting 99
Wipers 100
Changing bulbs..... 190-193
- front lamps
- front foglamps
- side repeaters

Lane departure warning system..... 168

Changing bulbs..... 194-196
- rear lamps
- 3rd brake lamp
- number plate lamp

Fuel tank..... 92

Parking sensors..... 169-170
Towbar..... 209
Towing 207

Door mirrors..... 76
Side spotlamps 98

Boot 90
Temporary puncture repair kit..... 183-185
Changing a wheel..... 186-189
- tools
- removing

Opening rear screen..... 90

Under-inflation detection..... 127
Braking assistance 128
Trajectory control..... 129
Pneumatic suspension 171-172
Tyre pressures..... 226

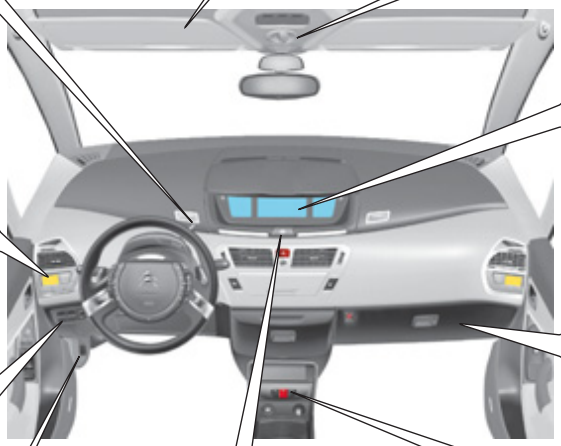
Doors 88-89
- opening/closing
- central locking
- emergency control

Child lock 125
Electric windows 86-87

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

VISUAL SEARCH

INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS



Sun visor..... 105

5-speed manual gearbox..... 147
Electronic gearbox system 149-152
Automatic gearbox..... 156-159
Hill start assist 146

Courtesy lamps..... 103
Toll/parking ticket windows 105
Child surveillance mirror 105
Rear view mirror 77

NaviDrive 231-273
Setting the date/time..... 264
MyWay..... 275-306
Setting the date/time..... 298
Audio system 307-328
Setting the date/time..... 320

General: ventilation/heating/air conditioning 56-57
Manual air conditioning..... 58-59
Digital air conditioning 60-63
Additional air conditioning..... 64

Interior fittings 106-108
- glovebox
- storage
- cool storage
- mat

Dashboard fuses 197-199

Opening the bonnet..... 174
Changing a fuse 197

Electric parking brake..... 139-145

Centre console 107
Smoker's kit 107
Emergency or assistance call 130, 227
Lane departure warning system..... 168

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

VISUAL SEARCH

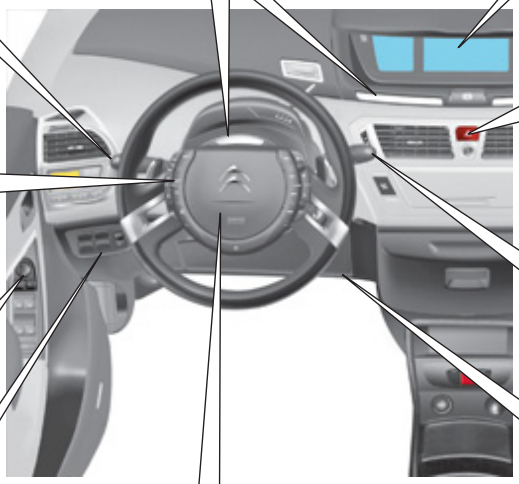
INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS (CONTINUED)

Instrument panels 31-32
Warning lamps 33-41
Indicators 42-43
Gear shift indicator 148
Mileage recorders 44
Lighting dimmer 44

Multifunction screens 45-53
- Screen A
- Screen C
- MyWay colour screen
- NaviDrive colour screen

Exterior lighting controls 94-97
Direction indicators 126

Steering mounted controls 160-161
Speed limiter 162-163
Cruise control 164-165
Parking space sensor 166-167



Hazard warning lamps 126
Scented air freshener 65-66

Wiper controls 100-102
Trip computer 53-55

Door mirrors 76
Electric windows, deactivating 86-87

Interior mood lighting 104

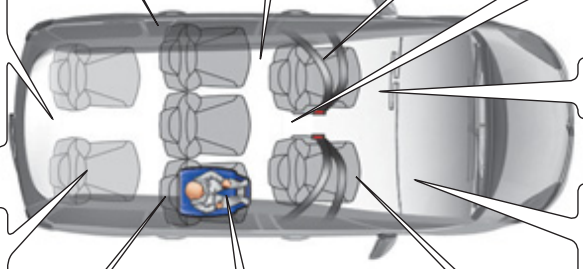
Alarm 84
Headlamp adjustment 98
Stop & Start 153
Opening the fuel filler flap 92
Parking sensors 169-170

Horn 126
Steering wheel adjustment 77

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

VISUAL SEARCH

INTERIOR



Side blinds 110

Rear fittings 109-110
- rear tables
- footwell storage
- side blinds
- rear blind (Grand C4 Picasso)

Seat belts..... 131-134

Boot fittings..... 111-115
- rear parcel shelf
- modubox (C4 Picasso)
- net and luggage cover (Grand C4 Picasso)
- bag hook
- separation net (Grand C4 Picasso)
- lashing rings
- luggage net (Grand C4 Picasso)

Torch..... 116

Video pack..... 329-336

Mats..... 108

Rear seats (3rd row)..... 74

Seat modularity/ configuration..... 75

Airbags 135-138

Deactivating the passenger's front airbag 136

Rear head restraints..... 70

Rear seats (2nd row)..... 70-73

Front seats..... 67-69
- manual
- electric

Conventional child seats..... 117-121

ISOFIX child seats..... 122-124

Child lock..... 125

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

VISUAL SEARCH

TECHNICAL DATA - MAINTENANCE

Petrol engines..... 213
Petrol weights..... 214
Diesel engines..... 215-216
Diesel weights 217-220
Petrol/Diesel weights, commercial versions..... 221-222
Dimensions..... 223-225
Identification markings..... 226

Bleeding the Diesel fuel filter..... 175
Running out of fuel, Diesel 176

Fuses at the battery..... 202
Battery 203-205
Energy economy mode..... 206

Checking levels 179-180
- oil
- brake fluid
- power steering fluid
- coolant
- screenwash/headlamp wash fluid

Engine compartment fuses 200-201

Changing bulbs..... 190-193

Checking components..... 181-182
- battery
- air/passenger compartment filter
- oil filter
- particle filter (Diesel)
- brake pads/discs

Opening the bonnet..... 174
Under the bonnet, petrol..... 177
Under the bonnet, Diesel..... 178

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ALPHABETICAL INDEX

A ABS and EBFD systems 128
Accessories 211
Accessory socket, 12 V 107
Access to the 3rd row 72
Adjusting headlamps 98
Adjusting head restraints ... 67, 70
Adjusting seat belt height..... 131
Adjusting the steering wheel.... 77
Airbags, curtain..... 137, 138
Airbags, front 138
Airbags, lateral..... 137, 138
Air conditioning 29, 56
Air conditioning, additional..... 60
Air conditioning, digital..... 60
Air conditioning, manual 58
Air distribution adjustment ... 58, 60
Air filter..... 181
Air flow 29
Air flow adjustment 60
Air recirculation 58, 60
Air vents..... 56
Alarm 84
Anti-lock braking system (ABS) 128
Anti-pinch..... 86, 91
Anti-theft 80
Armrest, front 67
Ashtray, portable..... 107
Assistance call 130, 228
Athermic windscreen 105
Audible warning 126
Audio streaming (Bluetooth)..... 319
Audio system 307, 309, 322, 324
Automatic illumination of headlamps 94, 97

A Automatic operation of hazard warning lamps 126
Automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers 100, 101
Auxiliary sockets 258, 259, 294, 314, 316

B
Backup starting 203
Bag hook..... 112
Battery 181, 203
Battery, charging 203
Battery, remote control..... 82, 83
Battery compartment fuse box 197
Blind for panoramic sunroof..... 91
Blinds 105, 110
Bluetooth (hands-free)..... 295, 296, 317
Bluetooth (telephone) 261, 295, 296
Bonnet 174
Bonnet stay..... 174
Boot 90
Boot lamp..... 116, 196
Brake discs 182
Brake lamps..... 194, 195
Brake pads..... 182
Brakes..... 182
Braking assistance system 128

C Capacity, fuel tank 92
Cargo net 114
CD MP3 ..... 252, 293, 313
Central locking 79, 88, 89

C Centre console..... 107
Changing a bulb..... 190, 194, 195
Changing a fuse..... 197
Changing a wheel 186
Changing a wiper blade 102
Changing the date..... 264, 298, 321
Changing the remote control battery..... 82
Changing the time..... 264, 298, 321
Checking levels..... 179, 180
Checking the engine oil level..... 43
Checks..... 177, 178, 181, 182
Child lock 125
Children 120, 123, 124
Child seats 117, 119
Child seats, conventional..... 120
Child surveillance mirror 105
Cigar lighter 107
CITROËN call button 229
CITROËN services 229
Closing the boot..... 79, 90
Closing the doors..... 79, 88
Cold climate screen 210
Cold storage 107
Concertina boards 74
Connectors, audio..... 108, 253, 254, 294, 314, 316
Control panel 276
Coolant level 180
Courtesy lamps..... 103, 196
Cruise control..... 164
Cup holder 107

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ALPHABETICAL INDEX

D Date (setting).....264, 298, 320, 321
Daytime running lamps.....96, 190, 193
Deactivating the passenger airbag.....135
Deadlocking.....79
Demisting the rear screen 58, 60
Diesel additive level.....180
Dimensions.....223
Dipped beam 94, 190, 191
Dipstick 43, 179
Directional lighting 99
Direction indicators 126, 190, 192, 194, 195
Doors 88
Doors emergency control.....89
Door trays 104, 108
Driving positions (memorising).....69
DVD player 330
Dynamic emergency braking.....139

E EBA (Emergency braking assistance) 128
Eco-driving 29
Eco-driving (advice).....29
Economical driving 29
Economy mode.....206
Electric window controls 86
Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) 128
E Electronic engine immobiliser 80, 83
Emergency boot release.....91
Emergency braking system 128
Emergency call 130, 228, 229
Emergency warning lamps 126
Energy economy mode.....206
Engine, Diesel.....93, 178
Engine, petrol.....93, 177
Engine compartment.....177, 178
Engine compartment fusebox.....197
Engine oil level indicator.....43, 179
Engines.....213, 215
Environment.....29, 83
ESP/ASR 129

F Filling with fuel 92, 93
Fitting a wheel.....188
Fitting roof bars.....210
Flashing indicators.....126
Foglamps, rear.....95
Folding the rear seats.....70, 72, 74
Fragrance cartridge 65
Front foglamps.....95, 193
Front seats.....67-69
Fuel.....29, 93
Fuel consumption 29
Fuel filler cap 92
Fuel filler flap 92
Fuel gauge.....92
Fuel tank.....92
Fusebox, dashboard 197
Fuses.....197

G G.P.S.....239, 242, 245, 247, 281
Gearbox, automatic 156, 182
Gearbox, electronic 149, 153, 182
Gearbox, manual.....147, 148, 153, 182
Gear efficiency indicator 148
Gear lever.....29
Gear lever, automatic gearbox.....156
Gear lever, electronic gearbox system 149
Gear lever, manual gearbox 147
Glove box.....106
Guidance 239, 245, 281

H Halogen headlamps.....190
Hands-free kit 295, 296, 317
Hard disk (copy).....254, 255
Hazard warning lamps 126
Headlamp adjustment.....98
Headlamps, directional 98, 99
Headlamp wash 101
Headlamp wash reservoir.....180
Head restraints, front 67
Head restraints, rear 70
Heated seats.....68
Heating 29, 56
Height and reach adjustment, steering wheel 77
Hill start assist.....146

I Identification plates 226
Indicator lamps, status.....39
Indicators, direction.....126

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ALPHABETICAL INDEX

I Inflating tyres 29
Inputs for audio system 258, 294, 314, 316
Instrument panel lighting..... 44
Instrument panels 31, 32
Instrument panel screen..... 31, 32, 148
Interior mood lighting 104
ISOFIX child seats 122-124
ISOFIX mountings 122

J Jack 186
JACK socket 314, 316
Jukebox (playing)..... 256

K Keeping children safe..... 117, 120, 122-124
Key in ignition warning..... 81
Key with remote control..... 78-80, 83

L Labels, identification 226
Lamps, rear..... 194, 195
Lamps, warning and indicator..... 33, 36, 37
Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS)..... 168
LED daytime running lamps..... 96
Level, brake fluid..... 179
Level, headlamp wash 180
Level, power steering fluid 179
Levels and checks 177-180
Lighting, guide-me home..... 96, 97

L Lighting, interior 103, 196
Lighting bulbs (replacement) 190, 194, 195
Lighting control stalk 94
Lighting dimmer 31, 32, 44
Lighting on reminder 95
Lighting pack..... 104
Loading 29
Loading/unloading assistance..... 171
Load space cover 111
Localised assistance call 228, 229
Localised emergency call 228, 229
Locating your vehicle 80
Locking from the inside..... 88
Luggage retaining net 115

M Main beam 94, 190, 191
Maintenance 29
Map (colour screen)..... 247
Map reading lamps 103, 196
Markings, identification 226
Mat..... 108
Menu, main 236, 237, 310
Mini fuel level 92
Mirror, rear view 77
Mirrors, door 76
Modubox 112
Modularity, seats 75
Motorway function (direction indicators)..... 126
Mountings for ISOFIX seats 122
MP3 CD 252, 293, 313

M Multifunction screen..... 45, 47, 50, 52
Music media players 292
MyWay 50, 276, 278, 299

N Navigation..... 239, 281
Net 112
Number plate lamps..... 195

O Oil filter..... 181
Oil level 43, 179
Opening the bonnet 174
Opening the boot 78, 90
Opening the doors 78, 88
Opening the panoramic sunroof blind 91
Opening the rear screen 90
Operation indicator lamps 33, 36, 38, 39

P Paint colour code 226
Panoramic glass sunroof 91
Parcel shelf, rear..... 109
Parking brake..... 182
Parking brake, electric 139
Parking sensors, front..... 170
Parking sensors, rear..... 169
Parking space sensor 166
Particle emission filter.... 180, 181
Passenger compartment filter..... 181
Player, CD MP3 ..... 252, 293, 313
Pneumatic suspension..... 171

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ALPHABETICAL INDEX

P Port, USB 108, 253, 254, 314, 316
Priming the fuel system 175
Protecting children 117, 120, 122-124
Puncture 183, 186

R Radio 291, 311
Reading lamps, rear 104, 109
Rear foglamp 193
Rear screen, opening 90
Recharging the battery 203
Regeneration of the particle emissions filter 181
Reinitialising the electric windows 86
Reinitialising the remote control 82
Remote control 78, 79, 83, 331
Removable screen (snow shield) 210
Removing a wheel 188
Removing the mat 108
Repair kit, puncture 183
Replacing bulbs 190, 194, 195
Replacing fuses 197
Replacing the air filter 181
Replacing the oil filter 181
Replacing the passenger compartment filter 181
Replacing wiper blades 102
Resetting the service indicator 43
Resetting the trip recorder 44
Rev counter 31, 32
R Reversing lamp 194, 195
Rigid panel 72
Risk areas (update) 244, 288
Roof bars 210
Routine checks 181, 182
Running out of fuel (Diesel) 175

S Safety for children 86, 125
Scented air freshener 65
Screen, colour 16/9 ..... 50, 52, 236, 265, 278, 299
Screen, monochrome 310, 322, 324
Screen, monochrome A 45
Screen, monochrome C 47
Screen, multifunction 45, 47, 50, 52
Screen, rear video 333, 334
Screen-wash reservoir 180
Screen menu map 265, 299, 322, 324, 335
Screenwash, front 101
Screenwash fluid level 180
Seat adjustment 67, 68, 70
Seat belts 131, 134
Seat configurations 75
Seats, rear 70, 72, 74
Security bolts 188
Serial number, vehicle 226
Service indicator 42, 43
Servicing 29, 42, 43
Settings (Menus) 332
Setting the clock 264, 298, 320, 321
Shelf 70
S Short-cut menus 279, 280
Sidelamps ... 94, 96, 190, 192-195
Side repeater 192
Spare wheel 186
Speed limiter 162
Speedometer 31, 32
Spotlamps, side 98
Stability control (ESP) 129
Starting the vehicle 81
Steering lock 81
Steering mounted controls 233, 277, 309
Steering wheel, fixed centred controls 160
Stopping the vehicle 81
Stop & Start 55, 63, 92, 153, 174, 181, 203
Storage 109
Storage compartments 106
Storing driving positions 69
Sun visor 105
Sun visor flap 105
Synchronising the remote control 82
Synthesiser, voice 242
System, navigation 281
Systems, ASR and ESP 129

T Table of weights 213, 215, 221
Tables of engines 213, 215
Tables of fuses 197
Technical data 213, 215, 221, 223
Telephone 229, 260-262, 295, 296

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ALPHABETICAL INDEX

T Temperature adjustment 58, 60
Temperature control
for heated seats 68
Temporary tyre repair kit 183
Third brake lamp 196
TMC (Traffic info) 249, 289
Toll/car park cards.....105
Tools 186
Torch 116, 196
Total distance recorder 44
Towbar 209
Towing another vehicle 207
Traction control (ASR) 129
Traffic information
(TA).....290, 291, 312
Traffic information
(TMC) 249, 289, 290
Trip computer.....53-55
Trip distance recorder 44
Tyre pressures 226
Tyres 29
Tyre under-inflation
detection 127

U Under-inflation
(detection).....127
Unlocking 78
Unlocking from
the inside 88, 89
Update risk areas.....244, 288
Updating the date 320, 321
Updating the time.....320, 321
USB Box 108
USB Reader.....253, 314

V Vehicle identification 226
Ventilation 56
Video.....259
Video menu.....259
Video pack 329

W Warning lamps 37-39
Wash-wipe, rear.....100
Weights.....213, 215, 221
Welcome lighting 104
Wheel, changing 186
Window controls 86
Windscreen zones for toll/car
park cards.....105
Wiper, rear 100
Wiper control stalk 100, 101
Wipers.....100, 101

X Xenon headlamps.....190

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

This handbook describes all of the equipment available in the whole range.

Your vehicle will be fitted with some of this equipment described in this document, depending on its trim level, version and the specification for the country in which it is sold.

The descriptions and illustrations are given without any obligation. Automobiles CITROËN reserves the right to modify the technical specifications, equipment and accessories without having to update this edition of the handbook.

This document is an integral part of your vehicle. It should be passed on to the new user in the event of sale or transfer.

Automobiles CITROËN declares, by application of the provisions of the European regulation (Directive 2000/53) relating to End of Life Vehicles, that it achieves the objectives set by this regulation and that recycled materials are used in the manufacture of the products that it sells.

Reproduction or translation of all or part of this handbook is prohibited without written authorisation from Automobiles CITROËN.

For any work on your vehicle, use a qualified workshop that has the technical information, competence and equipment required, which a CITROËN dealer is able to provide.

Printed in the EU
Anglais
07-11

CITROËN AUTOMOBILES
Siège social : Immeuble Colisée III, 6 rue Fructidor - 75835 Paris Cedex 17 - France
TÉL. : +33 (0) 1 58 79 79 79 - www.citroën.fr
S.A. au capital de 16 000 000 € - R.C.S. Paris 642 050 199 - Siret 642 050 199 00990 - APE 741 J

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

11C4P.0040
Anglais

2011 – DOCUMENTATION DE BORD
4Dconcept
Diadeis
Seenk
Edipro

CRÉATIVE TECHNOLOGIE

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine